

arV  
11429

THE STUDENTS' SERIES

THE NEW METHOD  
FOR THE STUDENT

1914

# Cornell University Library

BOUGHT WITH THE INCOME  
FROM THE  
SAGE ENDOWMENT FUND  
THE GIFT OF  
**Henry W. Sage**  
1891

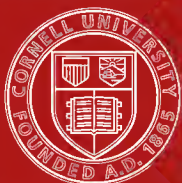
A. 232483. 22 IV 17

Cornell University Library  
arV11429

A new method for Caesar.



3 1924 031 244 100  
olin,anx



Cornell University  
Library

The original of this book is in  
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in  
the United States on the use of the text.

The Students' Series of Latin Classics

# A NEW METHOD FOR CAESAR

BY

FRANKLIN HAZEN POTTER, A.M.

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE STATE UNIVERSITY  
OF IOWA

*οὐ πόλλ' ἀλλὰ πολύ*

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

BOSTON, U.S.A.

1908

COPYRIGHT, 1907,  
BY FRANKLIN HAZEN POTTER.

**Norwood Press**  
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.  
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

## PREFACE

THIS book has grown out of the experimental work in Latin pedagogy which the author has carried on for several years at the State University of Iowa with the coöperation of the Iowa City public schools. It is offered as a solution of the universally recognized difficulty in passing from the beginner's book to Caesar.

The method followed is to give the particular preparation for a given chapter before the pupil attempts to read it. This makes it possible for the pupil to begin his reading of Caesar immediately after finishing the elementary book. The difficulties which the beginner in Caesar meets have been carefully studied and provided for with a view to his accumulating knowledge for future work as well as doing what is immediately before him.

It is assumed that the pupil knows a vocabulary of about three hundred common words, which are found in most beginner's books. Additional words, as they occur, are given in the special vocabularies, and all may be found in the general vocabulary at the end of the book. Idiomatic expressions, which cause the pupil to blunder with the thought or with the English translation, have been treated with the special vocabularies, and it is hoped that this feature of the book will commend itself strongly to teachers.

Hale and Buck's Latin Grammar has been taken as authority for the quantities of vowels. This has caused

some departure from the quantities with which many are familiar. Scientific investigations of the foremost American and European scholars have shown that the evidence does not justify the use of the macron over many vowels which have previously been believed to be long; the author has not deemed it wise to perpetuate these erroneous quantities.

Obvious etymologies, *e.g.* *abdūcō*, have been left for the pupil's own observation; where phonetic changes have disguised the original elements of compound verbs, the parts are indicated in the general vocabulary. The intention has been to exclude everything that would not have a direct bearing on the chief end to be sought at this stage of the pupil's work.

The subjects for study and review indicate some of the grammatical facts which the pupil must know in order to translate the given chapter. They do not constitute a systematic review of the grammar, but are suggested by what actually occurs in the text of Caesar.

When the pupil knows the words, idioms, and syntax involved in a given chapter, there still remains the difficulty due to the periodicity of Caesar's style. The short sentences given in the preliminary studies for each chapter furnish a variety of easy reading, which can be done rapidly, and which by presenting one difficulty at a time prepares the pupil for the more complicated periods of Caesar. Moreover, they will enable the pupil to see more clearly the real nature of many of the constructions which he meets in the text.

When the pupil has read the thirty chapters provided in this book, he should have enough mastery over Caesar's way of saying things to enable him to read with little



difficulty the rest of the required Caesar from a regular edition.

The author is under obligations to many teachers, whose criticism and encouragement have helped to make the book what it is. Professor E. M. Pease, the editor-in-chief of this series, has read the proof and made many helpful suggestions. Principal George R. Swain, of Bay City, Mich., has kindly allowed the use of some of the photographs which he took while following Caesar's footsteps in Gaul. Miss Helen M. Eddy, of the Winona Park School for Young Women at Winona Lake, Ind., and Mr. H. H. Fitch, of the Seattle High Schools, have read all the proof.

F. H. P.

THE STATE UNIVERSITY OF IOWA,  
August, 1907.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
LIST OF MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS . . . . .	ix
SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS . . . . .	xi
INTRODUCTION	
Caius Julius Caesar . . . . .	xv
Caesar's Provinces . . . . .	xvi
PRELIMINARY STUDIES TO BOOK I, CHAPTERS I-XXX .	1
TEXT OF THE <i>GALLIC WAR</i> , BOOK I, CHAPTERS I-XXX .	79
VOCABULARY . . . . .	I

## MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
1. CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR. BRITISH MUSEUM . . . . .	xiv
2. MAP: CAESAR'S PROVINCES . . . . .	xvii
3. THE RHONE NEAR GENEVA . . . . .	19
4. THE ARAR AT TREVoux . . . . .	31
5. THE VALLEY OF THE OUDRACHE . . . . .	43
6. MONT BEUVRAY, SITE OF BIBRACTE . . . . .	63
7. DOWN THE ARROUX AT TOULON . . . . .	65
8. MONTMORT, VIEWED FROM CAESAR'S POSITION . . . . .	67
9. THE RHINE BETWEEN GERMANY AND HELVETIA . . . . .	75
10. MAP: GAUL IN CAESAR'S TIME. <i>From Johnston and Sanford's Caesar</i> . . . . .	79
11. MAP: HELVETIA . . . . .	80
12. SCENE NEAR THE SUMMIT OF THE JURA MOUNTAINS . . . . .	81
13. PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE . . . . .	84
14. MAP: HELVETIA ON THE WEST . . . . .	85
15. MAP: CAESAR'S FORTIFICATIONS ALONG THE RHONE . . . . .	86
16. THE RHONE ABOVE CHANCY . . . . .	87
17. THE RHONE BELOW CHANCY . . . . .	88
18. SCENE IN A ROMAN CAMP. <i>From Johnston and San- ford's Caesar</i> . . . . .	96
19. PLAN: THE STRATAGEM THAT FAILED . . . . .	99
20. <i>MILITES GALLICI</i> . <i>From Johnston and Sanford's Caesar</i> . . . . .	101
21. MAP: CENTRAL GAUL . . . . .	102

	PAGE
22. VIEW FROM NEAR CROIX DE L'ARBRE . . . . .	102
23. PLAN : BATTLE WITH THE HELVETH. <i>From Johnston</i> <i>and Sanford's Caesar</i> . . . . .	103
24. SITE OF THE HELVETIAN CAMP, VIEWED FROM CAESAR'S POSITION ON THE HILL OF ARMECY . . . . .	103
25. <i>PILUM. GLADIUS.</i> . . . . .	104
26. HILL TO WHICH THE HELVETH RETREATED . . . . .	105
27. MAP : CENTRAL GAUL . . . . .	106
28. SITE OF THE FINAL STRUGGLE AROUND THE BAGGAGE .	107

## SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS

THE material is presented in the order in which it should be taken up and learned. Have the vocabularies and idioms committed to memory as the first step in preparing for the Caesar to be immediately read. Take time in the recitation to drill the class on these word lists. In no other way can the pupil escape the "tyranny of the general vocabulary." When assigning the lesson, go over the vocabulary with the class and call up related words in both Latin and English. Explain the literal meaning of the idioms.

The subjects for study and review in each instance are suggested by the particular text and deal with grammatical items which the pupil must have in mind in order to read the Caesar intelligently. The pupil will need to look up only those which he does not thoroughly understand. Most of the terms are self-explanatory and will suggest to the pupil the necessary information without the use of a grammar; but to what extent the pupil will need to use a grammar will depend on his previous preparation and the teacher's estimate of the importance of grammatical study at this stage. If any of the terms are unfamiliar, a reference to the grammar will make clear what is intended. The teacher may choose to designate four or five topics from each lesson for special study. Sometimes the reference will not seem to correspond to the subject for which it is

given; this is due to the different ways in which the grammars treat the constructions. When hearing this part of the lesson, ask questions about each of the topics to make sure that the pupils understand them. Do not be too particular to have rules recited verbatim; the pupil's own statement may be better; it is the content of the rule, not the form, that is wanted.

Then pass to the sentences. They are all very easy, and the pupils should be prepared to translate them readily. For the average high school class the vocabulary, idioms, subjects for study and review, and the easy sentences, together with a review of some Caesar text previously read, should constitute the lesson for one day, while the advance Caesar text is to be assigned for the following day. If the class can do more, assign, *e.g.* the translation of the last part of Chapter II and the preliminary studies for the first part of Chapter III.

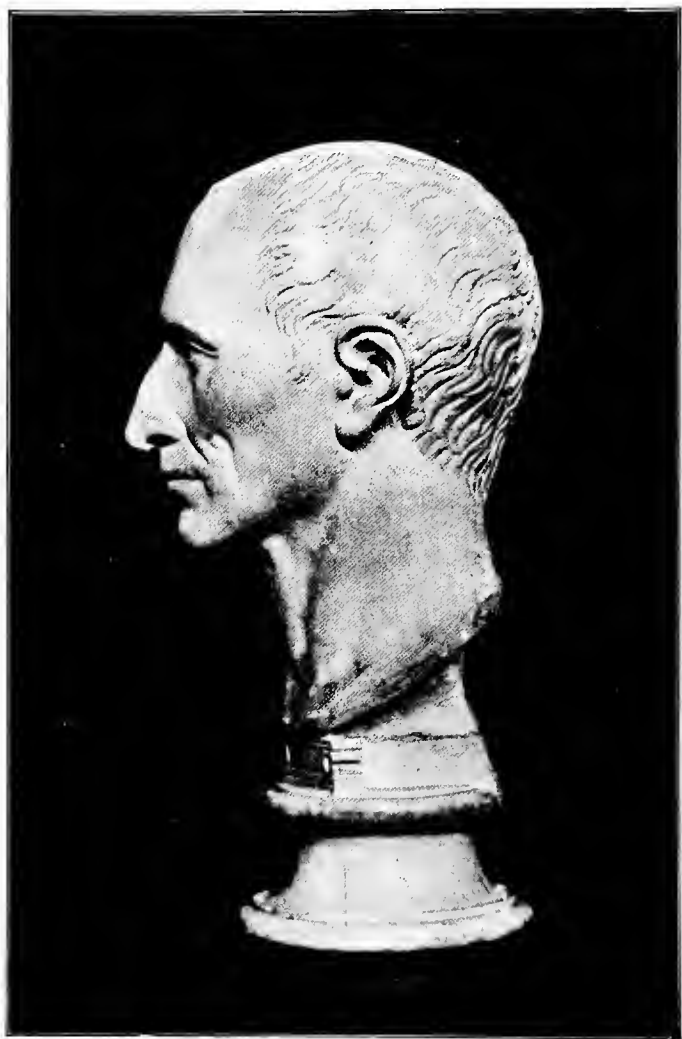
Before having a given passage in Caesar translated, question the class on the sentence-structure and the construction of individual words to make sure that the pupils understand the thought and the relations of the parts. Remember that the periodic structure of Caesar's sentences is a feature which is new to the English-speaking pupils, and do not expect too much of them at first. Finally, make the translation serve as an exercise in correct English expression.

Not all the grammars treat the same subject with equal clearness. It is desirable to have copies of two or more different grammars accessible in the school library; also the following books, which the pupils should be encouraged to read:—

CAESAR'S CONQUEST OF GAUL. By T. Rice Holmes.  
Macmillan & Co.

CAESAR. By T. A. Dodge. Houghton, Mifflin & Co.

If the school has a lantern, the work can be made infinitely more interesting and profitable with a series of slides from photographs of the regions where Caesar carried on his campaigns. Such a series can be obtained from Principal G. R. Swain, Bay City, Mich., who will send a catalog of slides on request.



CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

(British Museum.)



## CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR belonged to an ancient Roman family which had come to Rome from Alba Longa in the reign of Tullus Hostilius. He claimed King Ancus Marcius also among his ancestors.

Caesar was born July 12, 102 B.C. (or perhaps 100 B.C.). He was not strong as a boy, but by judicious and persistent exercise, he rendered himself capable of the greatest endurance. Through a thorough education secured from the very best teachers, he became a brilliant orator and was regarded by his contemporaries as second to Cicero only.

Though an aristocrat by birth, his sympathies were with the masses. He early identified himself with the cause of the party of Marius and openly defied the express orders of the dictator Sulla. With remarkable shrewdness and foresight he avoided compromising himself with useless and hopeless political entanglements.

When a mere youth, he saw military service in Asia and distinguished himself as a diplomat and soldier. At the earliest possible age for each he held the various important public offices: he was quaestor in Spain in 68; as aedile in 65 he had supervision of the great festivals and public games; with reckless extravagance he surpassed all his predecessors in magnificence. In 63 he was praetor-elect when Cicero the consul successfully combated the conspiracy of Catiline. Caesar tried in

vain to dissuade the senate from inflicting the death penalty on the conspirators.

In 61 Caesar as *propraetor* was governor of farther Spain. The sovereignty of the Roman state over these wild peoples had been little more than nominal. Caesar set about to subject the province to his authority. Overcoming the greatest difficulties, he outgeneralled the natives, who rose against him on every hand; and within his year of office he reduced the land to subjection. His soldiers hailed him as *Imperator*; and the senate, which was never friendly disposed to him, voted him the proud distinction of a triumph. This placed Caesar in a dilemma: he wanted the consulship; he could not enter Rome to sue for this office while he was in command of an army; he could not celebrate the triumph if he dismissed his army in time to sue for the consulship. With characteristic promptness and decision he renounced the triumph and was elected consul for the year 59.

As consul he thrust aside his colleague Bibulus; and with the help of Pompey and Crassus, with whom he had previously formed a coalition, he enacted a series of much-needed laws in spite of the violent opposition of the aristocracy. He secured for himself unusual appointments; at the end of his term of office he was to be governor of Cisalpine Gaul, Transalpine Gaul, and Illyria for five years.

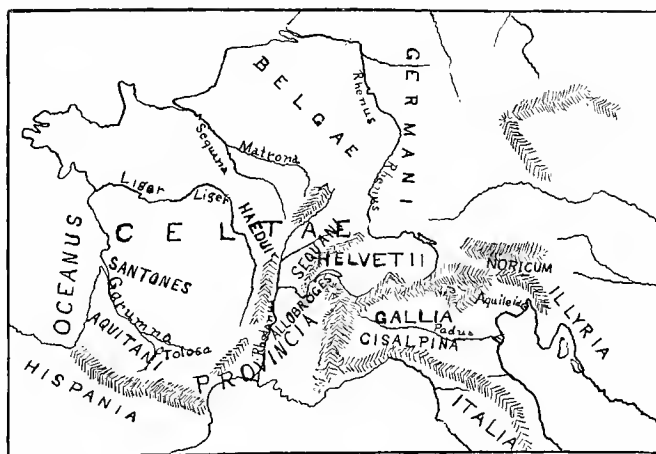
## CAESAR'S PROVINCES

ABOUT 225 B.C. the Romans began to plant colonies along the river Po. All of northern Italy east of the Alps was ultimately reduced to a province called Cisalpine Gaul (Gaul this side of the Alps). The province extended as far south as the Rubicon and Arnus rivers

and had a standing army of three legions. There were ordinarily about five thousand men in a Roman legion.

The province of Gaul across the Alps (Transalpine Gaul) was organized in 121 B.C. It extended along the coast from the Alps to the Pyrenees. East of the Rhone, by the recent subjugation of the Allobroges, the Roman power had been extended as far north as Lake Geneva. One legion was stationed in this province.

Migratory hordes of Gauls had from very early times been the terror of the Romans. Since the organization of the Gallic provinces several Roman armies had been annihilated there. Wars with the more settled tribes had brought many a disaster to the legions. These wild tribes were again getting restless when Caesar, in the year 58 B.C., became the governor of both Gallic provinces and Illyria. We shall read his own account of his adventures there.





# THE GALLIC WAR, BOOK I

## PRELIMINARY STUDIES

### CHAPTER I, FIRST PART

#### VOCABULARY

**Aquitānī, Aquitānōrum, m.,** the Aquitanians, *a people living in the southwest part of Gaul.*

**Belgae, Belgārum, m.,** the Belgians, *a people living in the northeast part of Gaul.*

**Celtae, Celtārum, m.,** the Celts or Gauls.

**commeō, commeāre, commeāvi, commeātūrus,** go to and fro, visit.

**continenter, adv.,** continuously, continually.

**cultus, cultūs, m.,** cultivation, care, civilization.

**differō, differre, distulī, dilātus,** bear apart, defer, differ.

**dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus,** divide, separate.

**effēminō, effēmināre, effēmināvī, effēminātus,** make effeminate, weaken, enfeeble.

**Garumna, Garumnac, m.,** the Garonne, *a river of Gaul.*

**hūmānitās, hūmānitātis, f.,** humanity, refinement.

**importō, importāre, importāvī, importātus,** import.

**īnstitūtum, īnstitūti, n.,** habit, practice, custom, institution.

**lingua, linguae, f.,** tongue, language.

**Matrona, Matronae, m.,** the Marne, *a river of central Gaul.*

**mercātor, mercātōris, m.,** a trader.

**(parum, minus), minimē, adv.,** least; by no means.

**pertineō, pertinēre, pertinui,** extend, pertain to, tend.

**propterea, adv.,** on this account.

**proximus, proxima, proximum,** nearest, next, last.

**Sēquana, Sēquanae, m.,** the Seine, *a river of Gaul.*

## IDIOMS

**ad animōs effēminandōs pertinēre**, tend to weaken the courage.

**inter sē differre**, differ from each other.

**minimē saepe**, very seldom.

**proptereā quod**, because.

A perfect participle may be used as a predicate adjective. This use must not be confused with the use of participles in compound tenses of the passive voice. If *dīcīsa est* is regarded as a compound tense, *Gallia dīcīsa est* means "Gaul has been divided." If *dīcīsa* is regarded as a predicate adjective, it means "Gaul is divided" (in a divided state).

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Genitive of the Whole. (2) Dative with *Proximus*. (3) Ablative of Specification. (4) Enclitic Use of *Cum* when used with Personal and Relative Pronouns.

NOTE. When studying a reference in your grammar always examine carefully the examples used to illustrate the rule. References are to Allen and Greenough, Bennett, Gildersleeve, Hale and Buck, and Harkness.

A. (1) 346; (2) 384; (3) 418; (4) 143, *f*; 150, *d*.

B. (1) 201; (2) 192; (3) 226; (4) 142, *4*.

G. (1) 367-372; (2) 359; (3) 397; (4) 413, R. 1.

HB. (1) 346; (2) 362, III; (3) 441; (4) 418, *a*.

H. (1) 441-443; (2) 434, 2; (3) 480; (4) 175, 7; 182, 2.

TRANSLATE: Galliae ūnam partem incolunt Belgae; aliam (partem incolunt) Aquītānī; incolae tertiae partis ipsōrum linguā Cetae appellantur, nostrā linguā Gallī

appellantur. Tertiam (partem incolunt iī) quī ipsōrum linguā Celtæ appellantur. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garunna flūmen dīvidit. Gallōs ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.<sup>1</sup> Minimē ad Belgās mercātōrēs saepe commeant.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER I as far as *continenter bellum gerunt*, page 79.

## CHAPTER I, LAST PART

### VOCABULARY

<b>Aquitānia</b> , <b>Aquitāniae</b> , <i>f.</i> , Aquitania, the country of the Aquitaniāns.	<b>initium</b> , <b>inlti</b> , <i>n.</i> , beginning, origin.
<b>attingō</b> , <b>attingere</b> , <b>attigī</b> , <b>at-</b> <b>tāctus</b> , touch, reach, border upon.	<b>obtinēō</b> , <b>obtinēre</b> , <b>obtinui</b> , <b>obtentus</b> , hold, occupy, se- cure.
<b>contineō</b> , <b>continēre</b> , <b>continui</b> , <b>contentus</b> , keep together, re- strain, bound.	<b>occāsus</b> , <b>occāsūs</b> , <i>m.</i> , setting; <b>occāsus sōlis</b> , sunset, the west.
<b>cotidiānus</b> , <b>cotidiāna</b> , <b>coti-</b> <b>diānum</b> , daily, customary.	<b>Ōceanus</b> , <b>Ōcanī</b> , <i>m.</i> , the ocean.
<b>extrēmus</b> , <b>extrēma</b> , <b>extrē-</b> <b>num</b> , farthest, last, at the end.	<b>præcēdō</b> , <b>præcēdere</b> , <b>præ-</b> <b>cessī</b> , <b>præcessūrus</b> , go be- fore, surpass, excel.
<b>ferē</b> , <i>adv.</i> , almost, nearly; gen- erally.	<b>Pŷrēnaei</b> ( <b>montēs</b> ), the Pyre- nees (Mountains).
<b>Hispania</b> , <b>Hispaniae</b> , <i>f.</i> , Spain.	<b>quoque</b> , <i>adv.</i> , also, too.
<b>inferior</b> , <b>inferius</b> , <i>comparative</i> <i>adj.</i> , lower, lower part of, weaker.	<b>reliquus</b> , <b>reliqua</b> , <b>reliquum</b> , remaining, the rest, future.
	<b>Rhodanus</b> , <b>Rhodani</b> , <i>m.</i> , the Rhône.

<sup>1</sup> The Marne and Seine rivers together are thought of as one bound-  
ary; hence the compound subject, *Matrona et Sēquana*, has a singular  
verb.

<b>septentriō</b> , <b>septentriōnis</b> , <i>m.</i> , the north.	<b>spectō</b> , <b>spectāre</b> , <b>spectāvī</b> , <b>spectātus</b> , look at, look toward, face.
<b>Sēquanī</b> , <b>Sēquanōrum</b> , <i>m.</i> , the Sequanians, <i>a people of</i> <i>eastern Gaul</i> .	<b>vergō</b> , <b>vergere</b> , slope, lie, be situated.
<b>sōl</b> , <b>sōlis</b> , <i>m.</i> , the sun.	

### IDIOMS

**ab Sēquanīs**, on the side of the Sequani.

**inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs**, northwest.

**ad Hispāniam**, near Spain.

**quā dē causā**, and for this reason.

### SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Subjective Genitive. (2) Ablative of Separation.  
(3) Infinitive with Verbs of Saying and Thinking.

**A.** (1) 343, N. 1; (2) 401; (3) 580; 582, *a*.

**B.** (1) 199; (2) 214, 2; (3) 331; 332, *c*, N.

**G.** (1) 363, 1; (2) 390, 2; (3) 528, 2.

**HB.** (1) 344; (2) 408, 2; (3) 589; 534, 1; 590, 1, *a*.

**H.** (1) 440, 1; (2) 464, 1; (3) 613; 611, 2.

TRANSLATE: *Quā dē causā* Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs praecedunt. Helvētiī suis finibus Germānōs prohibent, aut ipsī in Germānōrum finibus bellum gerant. Eōrum finium ūnam partem Gallī obtinent. Pars quam Gallī obtinent initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō. Ūnam partem Gallōs obtinēre dixī. Ūnam partem Gallōs obtinēre dictum est. Pars quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est attingit ab Sēquanīs flūmen Rhēnum. Aquitānia ad eam partem Oceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER I, LAST PART.



## CHAPTER II, FIRST PART

## VOCABULARY

<b>coniūrātiō</b> , <b>coniūrātiōnis</b> , <i>f.</i> , conspiracy.	<b>Lemannus</b> ( <b>laeus</b> ), <b>Lemannī</b> , <i>m.</i> , Lake Geneva.
<b>cupiditās</b> , <b>cupiditātis</b> , <i>f.</i> , eagerness, desire.	<b>Messāla</b> , <b>Messālae</b> , <i>m.</i> , (Mar- cus Valerius) Messala, <i>con-</i> <i>sul in 61 B.C.</i>
<b>dīves</b> , <i>Gen.</i> , <b>dīvitis</b> , <i>adj.</i> , rich ; <b>dītissimus</b> , -a, -um, <i>super-</i> <i>lative of dīves</i> , richest.	<b>nōbilis</b> , <b>nōbile</b> , <i>adj.</i> , well known, noble, eminent.
<b>exeō</b> , <b>exire</b> , <b>exiī</b> , <b>exitūrus</b> , go out, depart.	<b>nōbilitās</b> , <b>nōbilitātis</b> , <i>f.</i> , no- bility, the nobles.
<b>Helvētius</b> , <b>Helvētia</b> , <b>Helvē-</b> <b>tium</b> , Helvetian, of the Hel- vetii.	<b>Orgetorix</b> , <b>Orgetorigis</b> , <i>m.</i> , Orgetorix, <i>a Helvetian no-</i> <i>bleman.</i>
<b>indūcō</b> , <b>indūcere</b> , <b>indūxī</b> , <b>in-</b> <b>ductus</b> , lead on, induce ; draw on, cover.	<b>perfacilis</b> , <b>perfacile</b> , <i>adj.</i> , very easy.
<b>Iūra</b> , <b>Iūrae</b> , <i>m.</i> , Jura, <i>a chain of</i> <i>mountains in eastern Gaul.</i>	<b>Pisō</b> , <b>Pisōnis</b> , <i>m.</i> , (Marcus) Piso, <i>consul in 61 B.C.</i>

## IDIOMS

**ūnā ex parte**, on one side.

**id iīs persuāsit**, he persuaded them (to do) this.

**M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus**, in (the year of) the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Subjective Genitive. (2) Objective Genitive.  
(3) Dative with *Persuāsit*. (4) Dative with Compounds.  
(5) Ablative with *Ūtor*, etc. (6) Ablative of Cause.  
(7) Ablative of Specification. (8) Volitive<sup>1</sup> Substantive

---

<sup>1</sup> The use of the subjunctive which is seen in commands, exhortations, suggestions, and the corresponding subordinate clauses, is called *volitive* in this book.

Clause. (9) Causal *Cum*-Clause. (10) Infinitive as Subject. (11) Indirect Discourse. (12) Causal Use of the Participle.

A. (1) 343, N. 1; (2) 348; (3) 367; (4) 370; (5) 410; (6) 404; (7) 418; (8) 563; (9) 549; (10) 452; (11) 580, *a*; (12) 496.

B. (1) 199; (2) 200; (3) 187, II; (4) 187, III; (5) 218. 1; (6) 219; (7) 226; (8) 295; (9) 286, 2; (10) 327; (11) 314, 2; (12) 337, 2, *f*).

G. (1) 363, 1; (2) 363, 2; (3) 346; (4) 347; (5) 407; (6) 408; (7) 397; (8) 546; (9) 586; (10) 422; (11) 527; (12) 664; 666.

HB. (1) 344; (2) 354; (3) 362, 1; (4) 376; (5) 429; (6) 444; (7) 441; (8) 502, 3, *a*; (9) 526; (10) 585; (11) 534, 1, *a*; (12) 604, 2.

H. (1) 440, 1; (2) 440, 2; (3) 426; (4) 429; (5) 477; (6) 475; (7) 480; (8) 568, 2; (9) 598; (10) 615; (11) 642. 1; (12) 638, 1.

TRANSLATE: Orgetorix civitatī persuāsit ut de finibus suis exirent. Perfacile est totius Galliae imperiō potiri. (Orgetorix dixit) perfacile esse totius Galliae imperiō potiri. Id facilius iis persuāsit. Unā ex parte flumine Rhēnō Helvētīi continentur.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER II as far as *dividit*.

## CHAPTER II, LAST PART

## VOCABULARY

<b>adficiō, adficere, adfēcī, adfectus</b> , affect, afflict, visit with.	<b>dolor, dolōris, m.</b> , pain, grief, distress.
<b>arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus</b> , judge, think.	<b>fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f.</b> , bravery.
<b>autem, conj.</b> , but, moreover, on the other hand.	<b>lātē, adv.</b> , widely.
<b>bellō, bellāre, bellāvī, bellātus</b> , fight, make war.	<b>lātitūdō, lātitūdinis, f.</b> , width.
<b>cupidus, cupida, cupidum, adj.</b> , eager, fond of, ambitious for.	<b>longitūdō, longitūdinis, f.</b> , length.
	<b>pateō, patēre, patuī</b> , be open, extend.
	<b>vagor, vagārī, vagātus</b> , roam about, wander.

## IDIOMS

**in longitūdinem**, in length.

**hīs rēbus fiēbat ut**, the result of these conditions was that . . .

**quā ex parte**, in this respect, on this account.

**prō multitūdine hominum**, in proportion to the number of meu.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Genitive with *Milia*. (2) Accusative of Extent.
- (3) Substantive *Ut*-Clause of Result or Actuality.
- (4) Genitive of the Gerund.

**A.** (1) 134, *d*; 135, *c*; (2) 425; (3) 569, 2; (4) 504.

**B.** (1) 80, 5; (2) 181; (3) 297, 2; (4) 338. 1. *b*).

**G.** (1) 95, R. 3; (2) 335; (3) 553, 3; (4) 428.

**HB.** (1) 131, 3; (2) 387, 1; (3) 521, 3, *a*); (4) 612, I.

**H.** (1) 168; (2) 417; (3) 571; (4) 626.

**TRANSLATE:** Minus lātē vagābantur. Fiēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur. Helvētiī bellandī cupidī erant. An-

gustōs fīnēs habēnnis. Angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur. Fīnēs mīlia passuum ducenta quadrāgintā patent. Fīnēs mīlia passuum centum octōgintā patēbant.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER II, LAST PART.

## CHAPTER III, FIRST PART

### VOCABULARY

<b>addūcō, addūcere, addūxī,</b>	<b>māvi, cōfirmātus,</b> strengthen.
<b>adductus,</b> lead to, bring, induce.	<b>en, establish, declare, assure,</b>
<b>amicitia, amicitiae, f.,</b> friendship.	<b>cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitūtus,</b> place.
<b>auctōritās, auctōritātis, f.,</b> authority, influence.	<b>establish, appoint, resolve, determine,</b>
<b>biennium, biennī, n.,</b> two years, a period of two years.	<b>dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus,</b> lead ; think, believe.
<b>carrus, carrī, m.,</b> cart, wagon.	<b>permovēō, permovēre, permōvi, permōtus,</b> move, influence, arouse, alarm.
<b>coemō, coemere, coēmī, coemptus,</b> buy up, purchase.	<b>profectiō, profectiōnis, f.,</b> departure.
<b>comparō, comparāre, comparāvi, comparātus,</b> prepare, get ready, procure.	<b>sēmentis, sēmentis, f.,</b> a sowing (of grain).
<b>cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfectus,</b> complete, accomplish, make.	<b>suppetō, suppetere, suppetii, suppetitus,</b> be on hand, hold out.
<b>cōfirmō, cōfirmāre, cōfir-</b>	

### IDIOMS

**ad proficiscendum pertinēre,** pertain to the departure.  
**sēmentēs quam maximās facere,** sow as much land as possible.  
**ad cās rēs cōficiendās,** for accomplishing these things.  
**in tertium annum,** for the third year.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) *Quam* with the Superlative. (2) Purpose Clause.  
(3) Informal Indirect Discourse. (4) Complementary Infinitive. (5) Gerund. (6) Gerundive.

A. (1) 291, *c*; (2) 531, 1; (3) 592; (4) 456; (5) 506; (6) 506.

B. (1) 240, 3; (2) 282; (3) 323; (4) 328, 1; (5) 338, 3;  
(6) 339, 2.

G. (1) 303, R. 1; (2) 545; (3) 508, 3; (4) 423, 2; (5) 432;  
(6) 432.

HB. (1) 241, 4; (2) 502, 2; (3) 535, *a*; (4) 586; (5) 612, III;  
(6) 612, III.

H. (1) 159, 2; (2) 568; (3) 652; (4) 607; (5) 628; (6) 628.

TRANSLATE: Ea quae ad proficiendum pertinent comparant. Cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiendum pertinērent comparāre. Cōstituērunt iūmentōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere. Cōstituērunt sēmentēs quam maximās facere. Cōstituērunt cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium nobīs satis est. Biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER III as far as *cōfirmant*.

## CHAPTER III, SECOND PART

## VOCABULARY

<b>acceptus, accepta, acceptum,</b> acceptable, liked.	<b>tāloedis, m.,</b> name of a Sequanian chief.
<b>Casticus, Casticī, m.,</b> name of a Sequanian chief.	<b>dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus,</b> choose, select.
<b>Catamantāloedēs, Cataman-</b>	<b>Diviciācus, Diviciāci, m.,</b>

Diviciacus, a <i>Haeduan</i> chief, friendly to the <i>Romans</i> .	<i>lĕgātĭō</i> , <i>lĕgātĭōnis</i> , <i>f.</i> , embassy.
<b>Dumnorix</b> , <b>Dumnorigis</b> , <i>m.</i> , Dumnorix, brother of <i>Diviciacus</i> , but unfriendly to the <i>Romans</i> .	<i>principātus</i> , <i>principātūs</i> , <i>m.</i> , leadership, supremacy.
<b>Haeduus</b> , <b>Haedua</b> , <b>Haeduum</b> , of the <i>Haeduan</i> s, a tribe of central Gaul; as noun, a <i>Haeduan</i> .	<i>suscipiō</i> , <i>suscipere</i> , <i>suscēpi</i> , <i>susceptus</i> , take up, undertake, begin.

## IDOMS

*plēbī acceptus*, popular with the common people.

*in mātirimōnium dare*, give in marriage.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Nominative as Predicate. (2) Accusative of Duration. (3) Volitive Substantive Clause. (4) Dative with *Acceptus*. (5) Ablative of Time.

A. (1) 393, *a*; (2) 423; (3) 563; (4) 383; (5) 423.

B. (1) 177, 3; (2) 181; (3) 295, 1; (4) 192, 1; (5) 230.

G. (1) 206; (2) 336; (3) 546; (4) 359; (5) 393.

HB. (1) 392, *b*; (2) 387, II; (3) 502, 3; (4) 362, I; (5) 439.

H. (1) 410, 1; (2) 417; (3) 568, 2; 565; (4) 434; (5) 486.

TRANSLATE: *Catamantāloedēs ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat. Orgetorix Casticō persuādet ut rēgnū in civitatē suā occupāret.*<sup>1</sup> *Dumnorix Haeduus eō tempore principātum in civitatē obtinēbat. Orgetorix Dumnorigī ut rēgnū occupāre cōnārētur persuādet.*

TRANSLATE CHAPTER III as far as *dat*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Though *persuādet* is present in form, it narrates a past event; hence *occupāret* is in the imperfect tense.

## CHAPTER III, LAST PART

## VOCABULARY

<b>cōnātum</b> , <b>cōnātī</b> , <i>n.</i> , attempt, endeavor, undertaking.	<b>iūs iūrandum</b> , <sup>1</sup> <b>iūris iūrandī</b> , <i>n.</i> , an oath.
<b>conciliō</b> , <b>conciliāre</b> , <b>conciliāvī</b> , <b>conciliātus</b> , win over, secure, procure.	<b>ōrātiō</b> , <b>ōrātiōnis</b> , <i>f.</i> , speech, words, argument.
<b>dubius</b> , <b>dubia</b> , <b>dubium</b> , <i>adj.</i> , doubtful, uncertain.	<b>perficiō</b> , <b>perficere</b> , <b>perfēcī</b> , <b>perfectus</b> , accomplish, finish, make, bring about.
<b>fidēs</b> , <b>fideī</b> , <i>f.</i> , faith, belief, faithfulness, pledge, protection.	( <b>multum</b> , <b>plūs</b> ), <b>plūrimum</b> , <i>adv.</i> , very much.
<b>firmus</b> , <b>firma</b> , <b>firmum</b> , <i>adj.</i> , strong.	<b>probō</b> , <b>probāre</b> , <b>probāvī</b> , <b>probātus</b> , approve, prove, show.

## IDIOMS

- perfacile factū**, very easy (to do).  
**plūrimum posse**, be most powerful.  
**Galliae potiri**, get the mastery over Gaul.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) *Potior* with the Genitive. (2) Genitive of the Whole. (3) Ablative Absolute. (4) Ablative of Means. (5) Substantive *Quin*-Clause. (6) Indirect Discourse. (7) Infinitive as Subject. (8) Ablative of the Supine. (9) Future Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

A. (1) 357, *a*; (2) 346, 2; (3) 419; (4) 409; (5) 558, *a*; (6) 580, *a*; (7) 452; (8) 510; (9) 194, *a*.

B. (1) 212, 2; (2) 201; (3) 227; (4) 218; (5) 298; (6) 314, 2; (7) 327; (8) 340, 2; (9) 115.

---

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes written as one word, *iūsiūrandum*.

G. (1) 407, 2, *d*; (2) 369; (3) 409; (4) 401; (5) 555, 2; (6) 527; (7) 422; (8) 436; (9) 247.

HB. (1) 353; (2) 346; (3) 421; (4) 423; (5) 521, 3, *b*; (6) 534, 1; (7) 585; (8) 619; (9) 162.

H. (1) 477, I, 3; (2) 442; (3) 489; (4) 476; (5) 595, 1; (6) 642, 1; (7) 615; (8) 635; (9) 236.

TRANSLATE: Perfacile factū est cōnāta perficere. Tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possunt. Nōn est dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possint. Ego meīs cōpiīs vōbīs rēgna conciliābō. Tōtīus Galliae potīrī possumus.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER III, LAST PART.

## CHAPTER IV

### VOCABULARY

**cliēns, clientis, *m.***, a dependent, vassal.

**condūcō, condūcere, condūxī, conductus**, bring together, collect, hire.

**cōnsciscō, cōnsciscere, cōnscivī, cōnscītus**, resolve, take upon one's self.

**cremō, cremāre, cremāvī, cremātus**, burn, consume.

**damnō, damnāre, damnāvī, damnātus**, find guilty, condemn.

**dictiō, dictiōnis, *f.***, a speaking, pleading.

**ēnūntiō, ēnūntiāre, ēnūn-**

**tiāvī, ēnūntiātus**, make known, report.

**eōdem, *adv.***, to the same place, to the same end.

**ēripiō. ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus**, snatch away, take from, rescue.

**exsequor, exsequī. exsecūtus**, follow out, follow up.

**familia, familiae, *f.***, body of slaves *or* vassals, household, family.

**incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātus**, set in motion, impel, arouse.

**indiciū, indicī, *n.***, informa-



tion, evidence, an in- former.	<b>poena, poenae, f.</b> , penalty, punishment.
<b>iūdicium, iūdicī, n.</b> , judgment, trial, court of trial.	<b>suspiciō, suspiciōnis, f.</b> , sus- picion.
<b>obaerātus, obaerātī, m.</b> , a debtor.	

## IDOMS

**ad hominum milia decem**, about ten thousand men.  
**causae dictiō**, trial (pleading of one's cause).  
**ex vinculis causam dicere**, plead one's case in chains.  
**sē ēripere nē**, save himself from (pleading).  
**iūs exsequī**, enforce the law.  
**sibi mortem cōnsciscere**, commit suicide.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Ablative of Accordance. (2) Volitive Substantive Clause explaining *Poenam*. (3) Substantive *Quīn*-Clause. (4) *Cum*-Clause of Situation. (5) Infinitive as Subject. (6) Conditional Participle.

**A.** (1) 418, *a*; (2) 561, *a*; (3) 558, *a*; (4) 546; (5) 454; (6) 496.

**B.** (1) 220, 3; (2) 294; (3) 298; (4) 288, 1, B; (5) 330; (6) 337, 2, *b*).

**G.** (1) 397; (2) 546, N. 2; (3) 555, 2; (4) 585; (5) 535; (6) 667.

**HB.** (1) 414; (2) 502, 3, *a*, N.; (3) 521, 3, *b*; (4) 524; (5) 585; (6) 604, 3.

**H.** (1) 475, 3; (2) 564, III; (3) 595, 1; (4) 600, II, 1; (5) 615; (6) 638, 2.

TRANSLATE: *Sī damnābitur, eum poena sequētur. (Eum) damnātum poena sequētur, ut ignī cremētur. Damnātum poenam sequī oportet. Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam coēgit; omnēs clientēs eōdem condūxit. Ob eam rem civitās incitāta est. Civitās in-*

citāta armīs iūs suum exsequētur. Cīvitās iūs suum exsequī cōnābitur. Cum multitudinem hominum magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est. Ipse sibi mortem cōnseivit.

#### TRANSLATE CHAPTER IV.

### CHAPTER V

#### VOCABULARY

- adsciscō, adsciscere, adscivī, adscitus**, attach, receive, admit.
- Boii, Boiōrum, m.**, the Boii, *a Celtic tribe.*
- cibārius, cibāria, cibārium**, pertaining to food; **cibāria, cibāriōrum, n.**, provisions.
- combūrō, combūrere, combussī, combustus, tr.**, burn, burn up.
- efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus**, carry out, publish, elate.
- exūrō, exūrere, exussī, exustus, tr.**, burn up, burn.
- Latobrigī, Latobrigōrum, m.**, *a tribe associated with the Helvetians.*
- molō, molere, moluī, molitus**, grind.
- nihilum, nihili, n.**, nothing.
- Nōreia, Nōreiae, f.**, *a town of the Norici.*
- Nōricus, Nōrica, Nōricum**, Noric, of the Norici.
- oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātus**, attack, lay siege to.
- quadringentī, quadringentae, quadringenta**, four hundred.
- Rauracī, Rauracōrum, m.**, *a tribe near the Rhine.*
- reditiō, reditiōnis, f.**, a return, returning.
- subeō, subire, subii, subitūrus**, come under, come up, undergo.
- tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus**, lift up, take, take away, destroy; elate.
- Tulingī, Tulingōrum, m.**, *a German tribe.*
- ūnā, adv.**, together with, along with.
- utī, same as ut**, that, so that, in order that.

## IDIOMS

**ad duodecim**, about twelve.

**nihilō minns**, nevertheless.

**ad eam rem parātus**, ready for this enterprise.

**omne praeter quod**, all except that which.

**trium mēnsium molita cibāria**, meal enough for three months.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Shortened Perfects. *Pugnārant* = *Pugnāverant*.  
 (2) Descriptive Genitive. (3) Dative with Compounds.  
 (4) Accusative of the Place Whither. (5) Ablative Absolute.  
 (6) Ablative of the Measure of Difference. (7) Ablative of Respect.  
 (8) Ablative of the Starting-point.  
 (9) Object of *Ūtor*, etc. (10) Purpose Clauses. (11) Volitive Substantive Clause. (12) Infinitive with *Iubeō*.  
 (13) Accusative of the Gerundive.

A. (1) 181, *a*; (2) 345, *b*; (3) 370; (4) 427, 2; (5) 419; (6) 414; (7) 418; (8) 427, 1; (9) 410; (10) 531; (11) 563; (12) 563, *a*; (13) 506.

B. (1) 116; (2) 203, 2; (3) 187, 111; (4) 182, 1, *b*; (5) 227; (6) 223; (7) 226; (8) 229, 1, *b*; (9) 218, 1; (10) 282; (11) 295, 1; (12) 331, 11; (13) 339, 2.

G. (1) 131, 1; (2) 365, 2; (3) 347; (4) 337; (5) 410; (6) 403; (7) 397; (8) 390, 2; (9) 407; (10) 545; (11) 546; (12) 423, 6; (13) 432.

HB. (1) 163; (2) 355; (3) 376; (4) 385, *b*; (5) 421; (6) 424; (7) 441; (8) 451, *a*; (9) 429; (10) 502, 2; (11) 502, 3; (12) 587; (13) 612, 111.

H. (1) 238; (2) 440, 3; (3) 429; (4) 419, 1; (5) 489; (6) 479; (7) 480; (8) 462, 4; (9) 477; (10) 568; (11) 565; (12) 614; (13) 628.

TRANSLATE: *Helvētiī ut ē fīnibus suis exīrent cōstituerant; id facere cōnantur. Ad eam rem parātī sunt.*

Sēsē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt. Helvētīi vicōs et reliqua aedificia incendunt. Frūmentum sēcum portātūrī erant. Domum reditiōnis spem tollent. Omnia perīcula subībunt. Parātīōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda erunt. Trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quisque efferat. Rauracī, fīnitimī Helvētiōrum, eōdem cōnsiliō ūtentur. Eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō cum Helvētiīs proficīscuntur. Helvētīi persuādent Tulingīs utī ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur. Boiōs ad sē recēpērunt.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER V.

## CHAPTER VI

### VOCABULARY

**Allobrogēs, Allobrogum, Acc.,**  
**Allobrogas, m.,** a Gallic tribe  
 near Lake Geneva; con-  
 quered by the Romans in 121  
*B.C.* Later revolted; finally  
 subdued in 61 *B.C.*

**Aprīlis, Aprīle, adj.,** of April.

**A. Gabīnius, A. Gabīnī, m.,**  
 Aulus Gabinius, consul in 58  
*B.C.*

**conveniō, convenīre, convēnī,**  
**conventus,** come together,  
 assemble, meet.

**difficilis, difficile, adj.,** not  
 easy, difficult, hard.

**existimō, existimāre, existi-**  
**māvi, existimātus,** judge,  
 think, believe.

**expeditus, expedita, expedit-**  
**tum, adj.,** unencumbered,  
 easy, light-armed (troops).

**fluō, fluere, flūxī,** flow.

**Genāva, Genāvae, f.,** a city of  
 the Allobroges, now Geneva.

**impendeō, impendēre,** over-  
 hang.

**Kalendae, Kalendārum, f.,**  
 the Calends, the first day of the  
 Roman month.

**multō, adv.,** much.

**nōndum, adv.,** not yet.

**nūper, adv.,** lately, recently.

**perpauci, perpaucae, per-**  
**pauca, adj.,** very few.

**quā, relative adv.,** where, by  
 which way.

**quīntus, quinta, quintum,**  
 fifth.

**singulī, singulae, singula,** one  
 at a time, one by one.

**vadum, vadī, n.,** a ford, a shal-  
 low place, shoal.

## IDIOMS

**nōn nūlli**, some.

**bonō animō in**, well disposed towards.

**diem dicunt**, they appoint a day.

**a. d. V. Kal. Apr.** (**ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs**), the fifth day before the Calends of April, March 28.

**L. Pīsōne A. Gabiniō cōsulibus**, in (the year of) the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius, 58 B.C.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) The Relative as Adjective. (2) Partitive Apposition. (3) Dative with *Proximus*. (4) Ablative of Place. (5) Descriptive Ablative. (6) Place Whence. (7) Descriptive Clauses. (8) Volitive Subjunctive in a Relative Clause. (9) Volitive Substantive Clause. (10) Result Clause. (11) Mood in Subordinate Clause of Indirect Discourse. (12) Object Infinitive. (13) Dates.

**A.** (1) 307, *b*; (2) 282, *a*; (3) 432, *a*, N.; (4) 429; (5) 415; (6) 427, 1; (7) 535; (8) 531, 2; (9) 563; (10) 537; (11) 580; (12) 563, *c*; (13) 631.

**B.** (1) 251, 3; (2) 169, 5; (3) 192, 1; (4) 228, 1, *b*; (5) 224, 1; (6) 229, 1, *b*; (7) 283; (8) 282, 2; (9) 295; (10) 284; (11) 314; (12) 331, III; (13) 371.

**G.** (1) 616; (2) 323; (3) 359; (4) 385, N. 1; (5) 400; (6) 390, 2; (7) 631, 2; (8) 630; (9) 546; 553, 2; (10) 552, 1; (11) 650; (12) 527; (13) p. 491.

**HB.** (1) 284, 4; (2) 319, I, *a*; (3) 362, III; (4) 436; (5) 443; (6) 451; (7) 521, 1; 517, 2; (8) 502, 1; (9) 502, 3; (10) 521, 2; (11) 534, 2; 535, 2; (12) 587; (13) 661; 664; 665.

**H.** (1) 399; (2) 393, 4; (3) 434; (4) 485, 2; (5) 473, 2; (6) 491, II, 2; (7) 591, 5; (8) 590; (9) 565; (10) 570; (11) 643; (12) 613; (13) 754.

TRANSLATE: Erant duo itinera; ūnum iter per Sēquanōs erat, alterum per prōvinciam nostram erat. Iter

per prōvinciam multō facilius fuit. Allobrogēs nūper pācātī erant; nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum erant. Nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum (esse) vidēbantur. Rhodanus nōn nullīs locīs trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est Genāva. Allobrogibus Helvētiī persuādēbunt ut per suōs finēs eōs ire patiantur. Helvētiī Allobrogas vī cōgent ut per finēs suōs eōs ire patiantur. Quādam diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.

### TRANSLATE CHAPTER VI.

## CHAPTER VII, FIRST PART

### VOCABULARY

**certus, certa, certum,** sure, certain. trustworthy.

**imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus,** command; levy (*soldiers*).

**licet, licēre, licuit,** *impersonal verb*, it is allowed, it is permitted.

**maleficium, malefici, n.,** harm, mischief.

**mātūrō, mātūrāre, mātūrāvī, mātūrātus,** hasten, make haste.

**Nammeius, Nanmeī, m., a** *Helvetian*.

**pervenio, pervenire, pervēnī, perventūrus,** arrive at, reach, come to.

**princeps, Gen., principis, adj.,** first, chief, foremost.

**rescindō, rescindere, rescidi, rescissus,** cut away, destroy.

**ulterior, ulterius, adj.,** farther.

**Verucloctius, Verucloetī, m.,** *a Helvetian*.

**voluntās, voluntātis, f.,** will, good-will, consent.

### IDIOMS

**quam maximīs (potest) itineribus,** by forced marches.

**prōvinciac militēs imperāre,** levy on the province for soldiers.

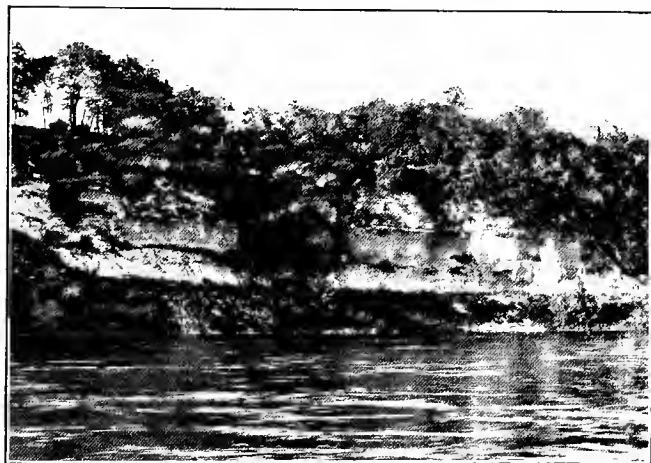
**eum certiōrem facit**, he informs him (makes him more certain)  
is **certior fit**, he is informed.

**iis est in animō**, they have it in mind, they intend.

**cuius voluntāte**, with his approval.

#### SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) *Quam* with Superlative. (2) Ablative of Attendant Circumstances. (3) Relative Clause of Purpose. (4) *Cum*-Clause of Situation. (5) Infinitive as Subject. (6) Infinitive as Appositive. (7) Indirect Discourse. (8) Substantive Clause of Request.



THE RHONE NEAR GENEVA

A. (1) 291, c; (2) 418, a; (3) 531, 2; (4) 546; (5) 452, 1; (6) 452, 2; (7) 580; (8) 563.

B. (1) 240, 3; (2) 220, 2; (3) 282, 2; (4) 288, 1, B; (5) 327, 1; (6) 169, 1; (7) 314, 1; (8) 295, 1.

G. (1) 303, R.; (2) 399, N. 1; (3) 630; (4) 585; (5) 422; (6) 419; (7) 648 ff.; (8) 546.

HB. (1) 241, 4; (2) 422, I, *a*; (3) 502, 2; (4) 524; (5) 585; (6) 597, 1, *b*; (7) 534; (8) 530, 2.

H. (1) 159, 2; (2) 473, 3; (3) 590; (4) 600, II; (5) 615; (6) 616, 2; (7) 642; (8) 565.

TRANSLATE: *Helvētiī per prōvinciam iter facere cōnantur. Prōvinciae maximum mīlitum numerum imperat. Dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt. Nōbīs est in animō iter per prōvinciam facere. Rogāmus ut tuā voluntāte id nōbīs facere liceat.*

TRANSLATE CHAPTER VII as far as *liceat*.

## CHAPTER VII, LAST PART

### VOCABULARY

**dēliberō, dēliberāre.** **dēliberāvī, dēliberātus,** deliberate, consider.

**dum, conj.,** while, so long as, until.

**facultās, facultātis, f.,** power, opportunity; *pl.*, means, resources.

**Īdūs. Īduum, f.,** the Ides, 13th or 15th of the month.

**intercēdō, intercēdere, intercessī, intercessūrus,** go between, intervene, exist between.

**iugum, iugī, n.,** a yoke, ridge, crest.

**L. Cassius. L. Cassī, m.,** Lucius Cassius, *consul in 107 B.C.*

**memoria, memoriae, f.,** memory.

**revertor, revertī (perf., revertī), reversus,** return, come back.

**spatium. spatī, n.,** space, distance; space of time.

**sub, prep. with accus. or abl.,** under, towards (*acc.*); under, at the foot of (*abl.*).

**sūmō. sūmere, sūmpsī. sūmp-tus,** take.

**temperō. temperāre. temperāvī. temperātus.** control, control one's self, refrain.



## IDIOMS

**ad Īdūs Aprīlēs**, about the Ides of April.

**memoriā tenēre**, hold in memory, remember.

**sub iugum mittere**, send under the yoke (*a humiliation inflicted on vanquished soldiers*).

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) *Faciundī* = *Faciendī*. (2) Descriptive Ablative.  
(3) Conditional Ablative Absolute. (4) Subjunctive  
*Dum*-Clause of an Anticipated Act. (5) Subjunctive in  
Indirect Command. (6) Gerund.

**A.** (1) p. 89, footnote 1; (2) 415; (3) 420, 4; (4) 553;  
(5) 588; (6) 506.

**B.** (1) 116, 2; (2) 224; (3) 227, 2, *b*; (4) 293, III, 2;  
(5) 316; (6) 338, 3.

**G.** (1) 130, 8; (2) 400; (3) 409; 667; (4) 572; (5) 652;  
(6) 432.

**HB.** (1) 164, 2; (2) 443; (3) 421, 6; (4) 507, 5; (5) 538;  
(6) 612, III.

**H.** (1) 243; (2) 473, 2; (3) 489, 1; (4) 603, II, 2; (5) 642;  
(6) 628.

TRANSLATE: Caesar memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōn-  
sulem occīsum (esse). Caesar memoriā tenēbat exercitum  
Cassī sub iugum missum esse. Concēdendum nōn est.  
Concēdendum nōn (esse) putābat; neque hominēs ini-  
mīcō animō temperābunt ab iniūriā. Datā facultāte per  
prōvinciam itineris faciundī, nōn temperābunt ab male-  
ficiō. Diem ego ad dēliberandum sūmam. Sī quid vultis,  
ad Īdūs Aprīlēs revertiminī.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER VII, LAST PART.

## CHAPTER VIII, FIRST PART

## VOCABULARY

<b>altitūdō</b> , <b>altitūdinis</b> , <i>f.</i> , height, depth.	<b>intereā</b> , <i>adv.</i> , meanwhile, in the meantime.
<b>castellum</b> , <b>castellī</b> , <i>n.</i> , fort, redoubt, stronghold.	<b>invitus</b> , <b>invīta</b> , <b>invītum</b> . <i>adj.</i> , unwilling.
<b>commūniō</b> , <b>commūnīre</b> , <b>commūnīvi</b> , <b>commūnītus</b> , fortify.	<b>perdūcō</b> , <b>perdūcere</b> , <b>perdūxī</b> , <b>perductus</b> , bring, conduct, prolong.
<b>dispōnō</b> , <b>dispōnere</b> , <b>disposuī</b> , <b>dispositus</b> , place here and there, distribute, station.	<b>quō</b> , <i>with subjunctive</i> , in order that.
<b>īnfluō</b> , <b>īnfluere</b> , <b>īnflūxī</b> , <b>īnflūxūrus</b> , flow into.	<b>ūndēvīgintī</b> , nineteen.

## IDIOMS

**mīlia passuum**, miles.

**mūrum perdūcere**, construct a wall.

**sē invītō**, (he being unwilling) without his consent, against his will.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Descriptive Genitive. (2) Accusative of Extent. (3) Ablative Absolute. (4) Ablative of Means. (5) Purpose Clause with *Quō*.

A. (1) 345; (2) 425; (3) 419; (4) 409; (5) 531, 2, *a*.

B. (1) 203, 2; (2) 181; (3) 227; (4) 218, 10; (5) 282, 1, *a*.

G. (1) 365, 2; (2) 335; (3) 409 f.; (4) 401; (5) 545, 2.

HB. (1) 355; (2) 387, I; (3) 421; (4) 423, *a*; (5) 502, 2, *b*.

H. (1) 440, 3; (2) 417; (3) 489; (4) 476; (5) 568, 7.

TRANSLATE: *Mīlitibus ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Iūram mūrum perdūcit. Mīlia passuum ūndēvīgintī fos-*

sam perdūcit. Mūrus est in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim.  
Sī Caesare invītō trānsire cōnentur, prohibēre possit.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER VIII as far as *posset*.

## CHAPTER VIII, LAST PART

### VOCABULARY

<b>complūrēs, complūra</b> <i>and</i> <b>complūria</b> , many, several.	<b>mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis</b> , <i>f.</i> , forti- fication.
<b>cōnātus, cōnātūs</b> , <i>m.</i> , an at- tempt.	<b>negō, negāre, negāvī, negā- tus</b> , say no, say . . . not, deny.
<b>concursum, concursūs</b> , <i>m.</i> , a running together, onset, charge.	<b>noctū</b> , <i>old abl. used as adv.</i> , by night.
<b>dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dē- iectus</b> , cast down, drive off, destroy.	<b>numquam</b> , <i>adv.</i> , never.
<b>dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dē- stitūrus</b> , cease, desist.	<b>ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus</b> , show, point out, declare.
<b>exemplum, exemplī</b> , <i>n.</i> , ex- ample, practice, precedent.	<b>perrumpō, perrumpere, per- rūpī, perruptus</b> , break through.
<b>interdiū</b> , <i>adv.</i> , by day.	<b>ratis, ratis</b> , <i>f.</i> , raft.
<b>iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnc- tus</b> , join.	<b>repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus</b> , drive back, re- pulse, repel.
( <b>parvus, minor</b> ), <b>minimus</b> , <b>minima, minimum</b> , least.	.

### IDIOMS

**nāvēs iūnetae**, a pontoon bridge, a bridge of boats joined to-  
gether.

**negat sē posse**, he says that he cannot.

**nōn numquam**, sometimes.

**operis mūnitiō**, the construction of the works, fortifications.

**vim facere**, use force, force a way through.  
**cōnantur sī**, they try to see if.

### SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Subjective Genitive. (2) Ablative of Separation.  
 (3) Ablative of Accordance. (4) *Sī* introducing Indirect Question. (5) Infinitive as Object.

**A.** (1) 343, N. 1; (2) 400; (3) 418, *a*; (4) 576, *a*; (5) 459.

**B.** (1) 199; (2) 214; (3) 220, 3; (4) 300, 3; (5) 331.

**G.** (1) 363, 1; (2) 390, 2; (3) 397; (4) 460, *b*; (5) 527; 530.

**HB.** (1) 344; (2) 408, 2; (3) 414; (4) 582, 2, *b*; (5) 589.

**H.** (1) 440, 1; (2) 462, 1; (3) 475, 3; (4) 649, II, 3; (5) 613.

**TRANSLATE:** Diem cōstituerat cum lēgātīs. Ego mōre populī Rōmānī nōn possum iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare. Sī vim facere cōnābiminī, prohibēbō. Helvētīī nāvēs iūnxērunt; aliī vadīs Rhodanī trānsīre cōnātī sunt. Sī perrumpere possent cōnātī sunt.

**TRANSLATE CHAPTER VIII, LAST PART.**

## CHAPTER IX

### VOCABULARY

<b>angustiae, angustiārum, <i>f.</i></b> , narrowness, narrow pass, difficulties.	<b>impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātus</b> , obtain a request, secure.
<b>beneficium, beneficiī, <i>n.</i></b> , service, favor, kindness.	<b>itaque, <i>adv.</i></b> , and so, accordingly.
<b>dēprecātor, dēprecātōris, <i>m.</i></b> , mediator, intercessor.	<b>largitiō, largitiōnis, <i>f.</i></b> , generosity, bribing.
<b>grātia, grātiaē, <i>f.</i></b> , gratitude, good-will, influence.	<b>obstringō, obstringere, obstrīnxī, obstrictus</b> , bind.

<b>propter</b> , <i>adv. and prep. with accus.</i> , near by; on account of.	tarily, by one's own influence.
<i>Gen.</i> , <b>spontis</b> , <i>Abbl.</i> , <b>sponte</b> , <i>f.</i> , of one's own accord, volun-	<b>studeō</b> , <b>studēre</b> , <b>studuī</b> , be eager for, be devoted to.

### IDIOMS

**Sēquanīs invitīs**, without consent of the Sequani, if the Sequani should be unwilling.

**eō dēprecātōre**, (he being intercessor) by his intercession.

**in mātirimōnium dūcere**, marry (*said of the man*); cf. **nūbō**.

**novae rēs**, new conditions, a revolution.

**habēre obstrictās**, keep under obligations.

### SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Objective Genitive. (2) Dative with *Amīcus*. (3) Dative with *Studeō*. (4) Accusative of Degree. (5) Ablative of Manner. (6) Conditional Ablative Absolute. (7) Ablative of Cause. (8) Ablative of Separation. (9) *Ut*-Clause of Purpose. (10) Substantive *Ut*-Clause. (11) Causal *Cum*-Clause. (12) *Habēre* with Participles. (13) Infinitive with *Patiōr*.

**A.** (1) 348; (2) 383; (3) 367; (4) 390, *c*; (5) 412, *b*; (6) 420, 4; (7) 404; (8) 401; (9) 531, 1; (10) 568; (11) 549; (12) 497, *b*; (13) 563, *c*.

**B.** (1) 200; (2) 192, 1; (3) 187, II, *a*; (4) 176, 3, *a*; (5) 220, 3; (6) 227, 2, *b*); (7) 219; (8) 214, 2; (9) 282, 1; (10) 295, 2; (11) 286, 2; (12) 337, 7; (13) 331, III.

**G.** (1) 363, 2; (2) 359; (3) 346; (4) 334; (5) 399, N. 1; (6) 409; (7) 408, 2; (8) 390, 2; (9) 545; (10) 553, 1; (11) 586; (12) 238; (13) 553, 2, N.

**HB.** (1) 354; (2) 362; (3) 362; (4) 387, III; (5) 445, 1; (6) 421, 6; (7) 444; (8) 408, 2; (9) 502, 2; (10) 531, 2; (11) 525; (12) 605, 5; (13) 587.

**H.** (1) 440, 2; (2) 434; (3) 426; (4) 416, 2; (5) 473, 3;

(6) 489, 1; (7) 475; (8) 462; (9) 568; (10) 566; (11) 598; (12) 640, 2; (13) 614.

TRANSLATE: Est ūna per Sēquanōs via. Sēquanīs suā sponte persuādēre nōn poterant. Dumnorīge dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrābunt. Dumnorīx largitōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat. Dumnorīx Helvētiīs erat amīcus. Dumnorīx plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habuit obstrictās. Quam plūrimās cīvitātēs habēre obstrictās volēbat. Helvētiī et Sēquanī obsidēs inter sē dabunt. Dumnorīx utī obsidēs inter sē dent perficit. Sēquanī (obsidēs dant) nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER IX.

## CHAPTER X

### VOCABULARY

**Aquileia, Aquileiae, f.**, Aquileia, a city of Cisalpine Gaul on the Adriatic Sea.

**bellicōsus, bellicōsa, bellicōsum**, warlike.

**Caturigēs, Caturīgum, m.**, an Alpine tribe of Gauls.

**Centronēs, Centronum, m.**, an Alpine tribe of Gauls.

**circum, adv. and prep. with accus.**, around, about.

**citerior, citerius, comp. adj.**, nearer, hither; used of the Gallic province nearer Rome, Cisalpine Gaul.

**cōscribō, cōscribere, cō-**

**scripsī, cōscripsit**, enroll, enlist.

**extrā, adv. and prep. with accus.**, outside of, beyond.

**frūmentārius, frūmentāria, frūmentārium**, pertaining to grain, productive of grain.

**Graioceli, Graiocclōrum, m.**, a Gallic tribe in the Alps.

**hibernus, hiberna, hibernum, adj.**, of winter; **hiberna, hibernōrum, n.**, winter quarters.

**hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemātūrus**, pass the winter, winter.

**maximē**, *adv.*, especially, very.

**Ocelum, Oceli**, *n.*, a town of the Graciveli on the western border of the province of Cisalpine Gaul.

**præficiō, præficere, præfēcī, præfectus**, place at the head, put in command.

**Santonēs, Santonum, Acc., Santonōs**, a tribe of western Gaul north of the Garumna.

**Segusiāvī, Segusiāvōrum, m.**, a tribe of central Gaul.

**septimus, septima, septimum**, seventh.

**superior, superius, comp. adj.**, higher, earlier, stronger.

**Tolōsātēs, Tolōsātium, m.**, the inhabitants of Tolosa.

**Vocontii, Vocontiōrum, m.**, a Gallic tribe south of the Allobroges.

#### SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Dative of the Possessor. (2) Dative with *Finis*. (3) Dative with Compound Verbs. (4) Ablative of Manner. (5) Ablative Absolute. (6) Ablative of Separation. (7) Ablative of Time. (8) Substantive *Ut*-Clause of Result or Actuality. (9) Infinitive as Subject. (10) Infinitive as Complement. (11) Infinitive as Object.

**A.** (1) 373; (2) 384; (3) 370; (4) 412; (5) 419; (6) 401; (7) 423; (8) 569, *a*; (9) 452; (10) 456; (11) 459.

**B.** (1) 190; (2) 192, 1; (3) 187, III, 2; (4) 220, 1; (5) 227; (6) 214, 2; (7) 230; (8) 297, 2; (9) 327; 330; (10) 328; (11) 331, 1.

**G.** (1) 349; (2) 359; (3) 347; (4) 399; (5) 409; (6) 390, 2; (7) 393; (8) 553, 3; (9) 535; (10) 423; (11) 527.

**HB.** (1) 374; (2) 362, III; (3) 376, *a*; (4) 445; (5) 421; (6) 408, 2; (7) 439; (8) 521, 3; (9) 585; (10) 586; (11) 589.

**H.** (1) 430; (2) 434; (3) 429, 1; (4) 473, 3; (5) 489; (6) 462; (7) 486; (8) 571, I; (9) 615; (10) 607; (11) 613.

TRANSLATE: *Helvētiis est in animō iter facere. Nūntiātur Helvētiis esse in animō iter facere. Id sī fiet,*

prōvincia hominēs bellicōsōs locīs patentibus finitimōs habēbit. Magnō cum periculō prōvinciae erit ut populī Rōmānī inimicōs locīs patentibus finitimōs habeat. Mūnitiōnī Labiēnum praeficit. Trēs (legiōnēs) ex hibernīs ēdūcit. Proximum iter in Galliam per Alpēs erat. Centronēs loca superiōra occupāvērunt. Complūribus hī proeliīs pulsī sunt. Ocelum est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER X.

## CHAPTER XI

### VOCABULARY

<b>abdūcō, abdūcere, abdūxī, abductus,</b> lead away, take away.	<b>dēpopulor, dēpopulārī, dēpopulātus,</b> ravage, lay waste.
<b>Ambarri, Ambarrōrum, m.,</b> a tribe of Gauls, related to the Haeduanus.	<b>expugnō. expugnāre. expugnāvī, expugnātus,</b> take by storm, capture.
<b>cōsanguineus, cōsanguinea, cōsanguineum.</b> akin; as noun, kinsman.	<b>exspectō, exspectāre. exspectāvī. exspectātus,</b> look out for, wait, wait to see.
<b>cōspectus, cōspectūs, m.,</b> sight.	<b>ita, adv.,</b> so, in such a way, thus.
<b>cōsūmō, cōsūmere, cōsūmpsī, cōsūptus,</b> waste, consume, destroy.	<b>mereor, merērī, meritus,</b> win, earn, deserve, serve.
<b>dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitus,</b> owe, ought, must.	<b>necessārius, necessāria, necessārium.</b> necessary, critical, pressing; <b>necessārius, necessārī, m.,</b> a relative, kinsman, close friend.
<b>dēmōnstrō. dēmōnstrāre. dēmōnstrāvī. dēmōnstrātus,</b> point out, show, state, make known.	<b>populor, populārī, populātus,</b> ravage, devastate.
	<b>possessiō, possessiōnis, f.,</b> possession.



**servitūs, servitūtis, f.**, slavery,  
servitude.

**solum, solī, n.**, soil, ground,  
bottom.

**statuō, statuere, statuī, sta-**

**tūtus**, set up, think, decide,  
pass judgment.

**vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vās-  
tātus**, ravage, devastate.

## IDIOMS

**dē populō Rōmānō merērī**, serve the interests of the Roman people.

**Caesarem certiōrem faciunt**, they inform Caesar.

**fugā sē ad Caesarem recipere**, flee to Caesar.

**nihil est reliquī**, nothing is left.

**abdūci nōn dēbuērunt**, they ought not to have been led away.

**mihi nōn est expectandum**, I must not wait.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Apposition. (2) Subjective Genitive. (3) Partitive Genitive with *Nihil*. (4) Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. (5) Dative of Agent. (6) Dative of the Possessor. (7) Ablative of Cause. (8) *Dum*-Clause of an Anticipated Act. (9) Result Clause. (10) *Cum*-Clause of Situation and Cause. (11) Complementary Infinitive. (12) Indirect Discourse depending on a Verb of Saying merely implied in the Context. (13) Supine. (14) Passive Meaning of a Participle from a Deponent Verb.

**A.** (1) 281; 282; (2) 343; (3) 346, 1; (4) 194, *b*; (5) 374; (6) 373; (7) 404; (8) 553; (9) 537; (10) 549, N. 2; (11) 456; (12) 580, *a*; (13) 509; (14) 190, *b*.

**B.** (1) 169; (2) 199; (3) 201, 2, *a*; (4) 337, 8, *b*, 1; (5) 189, 1; (6) 190; (7) 219; (8) 293, III, 2; (9) 284; (10) 286, 2; (11) 328, 1; (12) 314, 2; (13) 340, 1, *a*; (14) 112, *b*.

**G.** (1) 320 *f*.; (2) 363, 1; (3) 369; (4) 251; (5) 355; (6) 349:

(7) 408, 2; (8) 572; (9) 552; (10) 585 f.; (11) 423; (12) 649, N. 2; (13) 435; (14) 167, N. 2.

HB. (1) 317, 2; (2) 344; (3) 346, *a*; (4) 600, 3; 162; (5) 373, 1; (6) 374; (7) 444; (8) 507, 5; (9) 521, 2; (10) 525; (11) 586; (12) 534, 1, *a*; (13) 618; (14) 291, *d*.

H. (1) 393; (2) 440, 1; (3) 440, 5; (4) 237; 531; (5) 431; (6) 430; (7) 475; (8) 603, II, 2; (9) 570; (10) 598; 600, II, 1; (11) 607; (12) 642, 1; (13) 633; (14) 222, 2.

TRANSLATE: Agrī Haeduōrum vāstārī nōn dēbuērunt. Līberī in servitūtē abducī nōn dēbuērunt. Oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuērunt. Ita nōs dē populō Rōmānō meritī sumus ut agrī vāstārī nōn dēbuerint. Ambarrī nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibent. Ambarrī Caesarem certīorem faciunt sēsē nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prolībēre. Nōbīs praeter agrī solum nihil est reliquī. Nōn exspectandum est mihi dum Helvētīī in Santonōs perveniant. Caesar nōn exspectandum (esse) sibi statuit.

## TRANSLATE CHAPTER XI.

## CHAPTER XII, FIRST PART

### VOCABULARY

abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditus. put away, remove, hide.	concidō, concidere, concidī, concisus. cut up, cut down, kill.
adgredior, adgredī, adgressus. go towards, march against, attack.	explōrātor, explōrātōris. <i>m.</i> , a scout.
Arar, Araris, <i>m.</i> , the Arar, a river flowing into the Rhone at Lyons; modern Saône.	impediō, impedire, impedivī and impedī, impedītus. entangle, hinder, impede.
citrā, <i>adv.</i> and <i>prep.</i> with accus., this side, on this side of.	incrēdibilis, incrēdibile, <i>adj.</i> , incredible, marvelous.

**inopīnāns**, *Gen.*, **inopīnantis**,  
*adj.*, not suspecting, off one's  
guard, unaware.

**lēnitās**, **lēnitātis**, *f.*, gentle-  
ness, smoothness.

**linter**, **lintris** (*Gen. pl.*, **lin-  
trium**), *f.*, skiff, boat.

**mandō**, **mandāre**, **mandāvī**,

**mandātus**, intrust, commit,  
order.

**oculus**, **oculī**, *m.*, an eye.

**vigilia**, **vigiliae**, *f.*, a watch.

*The Romans divided the night  
into four watches from sunset  
to sunrise.*



THE ARAR AT TREVoux  
*Near here the Helvetians crossed.*

#### IDIOMS

**certior factus est**, he was informed.

**trēs partēs**, three-fourths.

**dē tertiā vigiliā**, soon after midnight.

#### SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Accusative with Verbs compounded with *Trāns*.  
(2) Ablative of Description. (3) Result Clauses. (4) In-

direct Questions. (5) Contracted Perfects. *Mandūrunt* = *Mandūcērunt*.

A. (1) 388. *b*; 395; (2) 415; (3) 537; (4) 574; (5) 181.

B. (1) 179. 1; (2) 224; (3) 284; (4) 300. 1; (5) 116. 1.

G. (1) 331; (2) 409; (3) 552; (4) 467; (5) 131. 1.

HB. (1) 386; (2) 443; (3) 521. 2; (4) 534. 2. III; (5) 163.

H. (1) 406; 413; (2) 473. 2; (3) 570; (4) 649. II; (5) 238.

TRANSLATE: In utram partem (*direction*) fluit Arar? In utram partem fluat iudicārī nōn potest. Trēs iam partēs Helvētiī id flūmen trādūxērunt; quārta ferē pars citrā flūmen reliqua est. Dē tertiā vigiliā ē castrīs profectus est.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XII as far as *abdidērunt*.

## CHAPTER XII, LAST PART

### VOCABULARY

**calamitās. calamitātis, f.**, disaster, misfortune.

**cāsus, cāsūs, m.**, accident, chance.

**immortālis. immortalē, adj.**, immortal.

**īsignis. īsigne, adj.**, marked, notable, signal.

**pāgus, pāgī, m.**, a district, canton.

**persolvō. persolvere. persolvī. persolūtus**, pay, suffer (*a penalty*).

**pūblicus, pūblica, pūblicum**,

*adj.*, of the people, of the state, public.

**sive, conj.**, or if; **sive . . . sive**, *correlatives*, either . . . or.

**socer, socerī, m.**, a father-in-law.

**sōlum, adv.**, alone, only.

**Tigurīnus. Tigurīna, Tigurīnum, adj.**, of the Tigurini, *one of the four cantons of the Helvetians*.

**ulciscor, ulciscī. ultus**, punish, avenge.

## IDION

**ea princeps poenās persolvit**, that was the first to pay the penalty.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Dative with Compound Verbs. (2) Ablative of Manner. (3) Ablative of the Place Whence. (4) Idiomatic Use of Adjectives. (5) Incorporation of Antecedent in Relative Clause.

**A.** (1) 370; (2) 412; (3) 427, 1; (4) 290; (5) 307, *b*, N.

**B.** (1) 187, III; (2) 220, 3; (3) 229, 1, *b*; (4) 241, 2; (5) 251, 4, *a*.

**G.** (1) 347; (2) 399, N. 1; (3) 390, 2; (4) 325, 6; (5) 616.

**HB.** (1) 376; (2) 445; (3) 451, *a*; (4) 243; (5) 284, 6.

**H.** (1) 429; (2) 473, 3; (3) 462, 4; (4) 497, 3; (5) 399, 3.

TRANSLATE: *Ea pars, quae calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, princeps poenās persolvit. Quae pars calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea (pars) poenās persolvit. Pīsonem Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium (interfēcērunt) interfēcērant.*

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XII, LAST PART.

## CHAPTER XIII, FIRST PART

## VOCABULARY

**aegrē** (*aegrius*, *aegerrimē*), *adv.*, feebly, with difficulty, hardly.

**Cassiānus**, *Cassiāna*, *Cassiānum*, *adj.*, of Cassius, with Cassius.

**commoveō**, *commovēre*, *commōvī*, *commōtus*, move, stir, disturb, alarm.

**cōnsequor**, *cōnsequī*, *cōnsecūtus*, follow, overtake, secure.

<b>cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātus.</b> take care, provide for, cause.	<b>sevērāvī, perseverātūrus,</b> persist.
<b>Divicō, Divicōnis, m., a Hel-</b> <i>vetian leader.</i>	<b>pristinus, pristina, pristi-</b> <b>num.</b> old, former.
<b>incommodum, incommodī.</b> <i>n.</i> , disadvantage, misfortune, defeat, disaster.	<b>reminiscor, reminiscī, re-</b> member.
<b>persequor. persequī. perse-</b> <b>cūtus,</b> follow up, pursue, at- tack.	<b>repentinus, repentina, repen-</b> <b>tinum,</b> sudden, hasty.
<b>persevērō, persevērāre, per-</b>	<b>sīn, conj.,</b> but if.
	<b>vetus, Gen., veteris,</b> <sup>1</sup> <i>adj.</i> , old, former.

## IDOMS

**hōc proeliō factō,** after this battle.

**pontem faciendum cūrat,** he has a bridge made.

**cum aliquō agere,** treat with some one, plead with some one.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Ablative of Cause. (2) Ablative of Time. (3) Genitive with Verbs of Remembering. (4) *U*-Clause of Purpose. (5) Substantive *U*-Clause of Actuality. (6) *Cum*-Clause of Situation and Cause. (7) Causal Participle. (8) Gerundive. (9) Statements and Commands in Indirect Discourse. (10) Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse. (11) Future Perfect changed to Pluperfect Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

**A.** (1) 404; (2) 423; (3) 350; (4) 531; (5) 570; (6) 549, N. 2; (7) 496; (8) 500, 4; (9) 580; 588; (10) 580; (11) 484, *c.*

**B.** (1) 219; (2) 230, 2; 231; (3) 206, 2; (4) 282, 1; (5) 297, 3; (6) 288, I, B; (7) 337, 2, *f*; (8) 337, 8, *b*, 2; (9) 331, 1; 316; (10) 314, I; (11) 319, *a.*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Vetus* is one of the few adjectives of the third declension which have a consonant stem throughout; Nom.-Acc. Neut. Pl., *vetera*; Abl. Sing., *vetere*; Gen. Pl., *veterum*.

G. (1) 408; (2) 393; (3) 376; (4) 545; (5) 557; (6) 586; (7) 666; (8) 430; (9) 650; 652; (10) 650; (11) 510.

HB. (1) 444; (2) 439; (3) 350; (4) 502, 2; (5) 521, 3, N.; (6) 525; (7) 604, 2; (8) 612, III; (9) 589; 533; 534; 538; (10) 534, 2; (11) p. 244, footnote.

H. (1) 475; (2) 486; (3) 454; (4) 568; (5) 571, 4; (6) 600, II, I; (7) 638, 1; (8) 622; (9) 642; (10) 643; (11) 644, 2.

TRANSLATE: Id (ut flūmen trānsīret) Caesar ūnō diē fēcerat. Id illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegēbant. Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ibunt Helvētiī ubi tū, Caesar, eōs esse volueris. Sīn bellō persequī persevērābis, reminiscere prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XIII as far as *virtūtis Helvētiōrum*.

## CHAPTER XIII, LAST PART

### VOCABULARY

**adorior, adoriri, adortus**, attack, assail.

**committō, committere, commisi, commissus**, join, trust, allow, commit.

**dēspiciō, dēspicere, dēspexi, dēspectus**, look down upon, despise.

**discō, discere, didici**, learn.

**dolus, doli, m.**, deceit, tricks, stratagem.

**imprōvisō, adv.**, unexpectedly.

**interneciō, interneciōnis, f.**,

extermination, annihilation.

**magis, adv.**, more, rather.

**maiōrēs, maiōrum, m.**, ancestors.

**nītor, nīti, nīsus or nīxus**, struggle, strive, exert one's self.

**prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditus**, give up, betray, hand down, transmit.

**tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus**, grant, render, attribute, ascribe.

## IDIOMS

**nē suae magnopere virtūtī tribuat**, let him not give his own valor too much credit.

**insidiis nīti**, rely on ambush.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Ablative of Means. (2) Ablative with *Nitor*. (3) Result Clauses. (4) Substantive Clause of Consent or Acquiescence. (5) *Quod*-Clause of Respect. (6) Prohibitions in Direct and Indirect Discourse. (7) Subordinate Clause in Indirect Discourse. (8) Future Perfect in Indirect Discourse.

**A.** (1) 409; (2) 431; (3) 537; (4) 563; (5) 572, *a*; (6) 450; 588, *N.* 2; (7) 580; (8) 484, *c*.

**B.** (1) 218; (2) 218, 3; (3) 284; (4) 295, 2; (5) 299, 2; (6) 276, *c*; 316; (7) 314, 1; (8) 319, *B.* *a*.

**G.** (1) 401; (2) 401, *R.* 6; (3) 552; (4) 553, 2; (5) 525, 2; (6) 271, 2; 652; (7) 650; 654; (8) 510.

**HB.** (1) 423; (2) 438, 1; (3) 521, 2; (4) 531, 2; (5) 552, 2; (6) 501, 3, *a*, 2; 534, 2; 538; (7) 534, 2; (8) p. 244, footnote.

**H.** (1) 476; (2) 476, 3; (3) 570; (4) 565; (5) 588, 3, *N.*; (6) 561; 642, 4; (7) 643; (8) 644, 2.

**TRANSLATE:** Quod improvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, nōlī ob eam rem nōs ipsōs dēspicere. Iī quī flūmen trānsierant suīs auxilium ferre nōn poterant. Quod ūnum pāgum adortus es cum iī suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nōlī ob eam rem tuae magnopere virtūtī tribuere. Nōs ita ā maiōribus nostrīs didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō nītāmur. Nōlī committere ut is locus ex calanitate populī Rōmānī nōmen capiat.

**TRANSLATE CHAPTER XIII, LAST PART.**



## CHAPTER XIV, FIRST PART

## VOCABULARY

<b>caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cantus,</b> be on one's guard, guard against.	<b>dēcipiō, dēcipere, dēcēpī, dē-</b> <b>ceptus,</b> deceive.
<b>commemorō, commemorāre,</b> <b>commemorāvī, commemo-</b> <b>rātus,</b> mention.	<b>dubitātiō, dubitātiōnis, f.,</b> doubt, hesitation.
<b>cōnsciūs, cōnscia, cōnscium,</b> knowing, conscious, aware of.	<b>meritum, meritī, n.,</b> desert, service.

## IDIOMS

**minus dubitātiōnis,** less hesitation.

**gravius ferre,** be more indignant.

**eō gravius ferō quō,** I am as much the more indignant as.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Forward-moving Use of the Relative. (2) Partitive Genitive with *Minus*. (3) Objective Genitive with *Cōnsciūs*. (4) Dative with *Cōnsciūs*. (5) Ablative of the Measure of Difference. (6) Ablative of Manner. (7) Ablative of Cause. (8) Clause introduced by *Quārē*. (9) Indirect Discourse. (10) Condition Contrary to Fact.

**A.** (1) 308, *f*; (2) 346, 3; (3) 349, *a*; (4) 383; (5) 414; (6) 412; (7) 404; (8) 535, *a*; (9) 580; 584; 585; 589; (10) 517.

**B.** (1) 251, 6; (2) 201, 2; (3) 204, 1; (4) 192; (5) 223; (6) 220, 3; (7) 219; (8) 295, 7; (9) 313; 314; 317; 318; (10) 304.

**G.** (1) 610; (2) 369; (3) 374; (4) 352; (5) 403; (6) 399, *N. 1*; (7) 408; (8) 631, 2; (9) 649 ff.; (10) 597.

**HB.** (1) 284, 8; (2) 346; (3) 354; (4) 363, 1, *b*; (5) 424, *a*; (6) 445; (7) 444; (8) 513, 2; (9) 533; 534; 535, 2; (10) 581.

**H.** (1) 510; (2) 442; (3) 451, *N. 2*; (4) 434; (5) 479; (6) 473, 3; (7) 475; (8) 591, 4; (9) 642-645; 647; (10) 579.

TRANSLATE: Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur. Eās rēs, quās commemorāstis (=commemorāvistis), memoriā teneō. Nōn meritō populī Rōmānī accidērunt. Eō gravius ferō quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidērunt. Populus Rōmānus ūllius iniūriae sibi cōnsciūs nōn fuit. Sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnsciūs fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre. Nihil commissum ā populō Rōmānō erat quārē timēret. Nōn sine causā timendum est.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XIV as far as *putāret*.

## CHAPTER XIV, SECOND PART

### VOCABULARY

<b>admiror.</b> <b>admirārī.</b> <b>admīrātus.</b> be surprised, wonder at, admire.	<b>enim.</b> <i>conj.</i> , really, for.
<b>commūtātiō,</b> <b>commūtātiōnis,</b> <i>f.</i> , a change.	<b>glōrior,</b> <b>glōriārī,</b> <b>glōriātus,</b> glory in, boast.
<b>cōnsuēscō.</b> <b>cōnsuēscere,</b> <b>cōnsuēvi,</b> <b>cōnsuētus.</b> become accustomed; <i>perf.</i> , be accustomed, be wont.	<b>impūne,</b> <i>adv.</i> , with impunity.
<b>contumēlia,</b> <b>contumēliae,</b> <i>f.</i> , an insult, indignity.	<b>impūnitās.</b> <b>impūnitātis.</b> <i>f.</i> , freedom from punishment, impunity.
<b>dēpōnō,</b> <b>dēpōnere,</b> <b>dēposuī,</b> <b>dēpositus.</b> lay down, lay aside.	<b>īsolenter.</b> <i>adv.</i> , insultingly.
<b>diūturnus.</b> <b>diūturna.</b> <b>diūturnum,</b> long ( <i>in time</i> ), long continued.	<b>interdum.</b> <i>adv.</i> , for a time, sometimes.
<b>doleō.</b> <b>dolēre,</b> <b>doluī.</b> <b>dolitūrus,</b> feel pain, suffer, grieve.	<b>recēns.</b> <i>Gen.</i> , <b>recentis,</b> <i>adj.</i> , new, fresh, late.
	<b>secundus.</b> <b>secunda.</b> <b>secundum.</b> following, second, favorable.
	<b>temptō.</b> <b>temptūre.</b> <b>temptāvi.</b> <b>temptātus,</b> try, attempt.
	<b>vexō.</b> <b>vexāre,</b> <b>vexāvī.</b> <b>vexātus,</b> harass, annoy, ravage.

## IDIOMS

**quod sī**, but if.

**eōdem pertinet**, tends in the same direction, amounts to the same thing.

**impūne iniūriās inferre**, commit wrongs with impunity.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Object of Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting.  
 (2) *Quō*-Clause of Purpose. (3) Substantive *Quod*-Clause.  
 (4) Interrogative Sentences. (5) Rhetorical Questions in Indirect Discourse. (6) Complementary Infinitive.

**A.** (1) 350; (2) 531, 2, *a*; (3) 572; (4) 332, *b*; (5) 586; (6) 456.

**B.** (1) 206, 2; (2) 282, 1, *a*; (3) 299; (4) 162, 2, *b*; (5) 162, 3; 315, 2; (6) 328.

**G.** (1) 376; (2) 545, 2; (3) 524; (4) 453-456; (5) 651, R. 1.; (6) 423.

**HB.** (1) 350; (2) 502, 2, *b*; (3) 552, 1 and 2; (4) 231, *d*; (5) 235; 591, *a*; (6) 586.

**H.** (1) 454; (2) 568, 7; (3) 588, 3; (4) 378; (5) 642, 2; (6) 607.

TRANSLATE: Num iniūriārum memoriā dēpōnere possum? Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivīscī vellem, num recentium iniūriārum memoriā dēpōnere possum? Mē invītō iter per prōvinciam temptāstis (= temptāvistis). Quod vestrā victoriā glōriāminī eōdem pertinet. Tam diū impūne iniūriās intulistis. Tam diū vōs impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrāminī. Deī immortālēs hominēs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscuntur; hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdunt. Cōnsuērunt (=cōnsuēvērunt) deī secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdere.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XIV as far as *concedere*.

## CHAPTER XIV, LAST PART

## VOCABULARY

<b>discēdō, discēdere, discessi,</b>	<b>satisfaciō, satisfacere, satis-</b>
<b>discessūrus, go apart, re-</b>	<b>fēcī. satisfactus. satisfy,</b>
<b>tire, depart.</b>	<b>make amends, apologize.</b>
<b>polliceor, pollicērī, pollici-</b>	<b>testis, testis, m. and f., a wit-</b>
<b>tus. promise, offer.</b>	<b>ness.</b>
<b>respōsum, respōsī, n., an</b>	
<b>answer, reply.</b>	

## IDIOMS

**illī dē iniūriis satisfacere,** make amends to him for wrongs.  
**iniūriās alicui inferre,** commit wrongs against some one.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Objective Genitive. (2) Dative with *Satisfacere*.  
 (3) Dative with Compounds. (4) Ablative Absolute.  
 (5) *Ut*-Clause of Purpose. (6) *Ut*-Clause of Result.  
 (7) Adversative *Cum*-Clause.

**A.** (1) 348; (2) 368, 2; (3) 370; (4) 420, 1; (5) 531; (6) 537;  
 (7) 549.

**B.** (1) 200; (2) 187, II; (3) 187, III, 2; (4) 227, 2, *a*); (5) 282;  
 (6) 284, 1; (7) 309, 3.

**G.** (1) 363, 2; (2) 346; (3) 347; (4) 409; (5) 545; (6) 552;  
 (7) 587.

**HB.** (1) 354; (2) 362, I; (3) 376, *a*; (4) 421, 3; (5) 502, 2;  
 (6) 521, 2; (7) 526.

**H.** (1) 440, 2; (2) 426, N. 2; (3) 429; (4) 489, 1; (5) 568;  
 (6) 570; (7) 598.

TRANSLATE: Cum ea ita sint, tamen ego cum Helvētiis  
 pācem faciam. Obsidēs ab Helvētiis mihi dentur utī ea  
 vōs factūrōs (esse) intellegam. Helvētiī Haeduīs iniū-

riās intulērunt. Sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs satisfacient, cum iīs pācem faciam. Ita Helvētiī ā maiōribus suīs institūtī sunt, utī obsidēs accipere cōsuērīnt (= cōsuēverint); eius rei populus Rōmānus est testis.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XIV, LAST PART.

## CHAPTER XV

### VOCABULARY

<b>amplius</b> , <i>comp. adv. or noun</i> , more.	<b>populātiō</b> , <b>populātiōnis</b> , <i>f.</i> plundering, pillaging.
<b>cireiter</b> , <i>adv. and prep. with ac-</i> <i>cus.</i> , around, about, near.	<b>praemittō</b> , <b>praemittere</b> , <b>prae-</b> <b>misī</b> , <b>praemissus</b> , send ahead.
<b>eupidē</b> ( <i>comp.</i> , <b>cupidius</b> ), <i>adv.</i> , eagerly ( <i>comp.</i> , more eagerly, too eagerly).	<b>praesentia</b> , <b>praesentiae</b> , <i>f.</i> , presence, the present time.
<b>īnsequor</b> , <b>īnsequī</b> , <b>īnsecūtus</b> , follow after, pursue.	<b>prōpellō</b> , <b>prōpellere</b> , <b>prōpulī</b> , <b>prōpulsus</b> , drive back, repel, rout.
<b>intersum</b> , <b>interesse</b> , <b>interfui</b> , be between, take part in.	<b>quīngentī</b> , <b>quīngentae</b> , <b>quīngenta</b> , five hundred.
<b>laccessō</b> , <b>laccessere</b> , <b>laccessivī</b> , <b>laccessitus</b> , harass, attack, provoke.	<b>quīnī</b> , <b>quīnae</b> , <b>quīna</b> , five each, five apiece.
<b>moveō</b> , <b>movēre</b> , <b>mōvī</b> , <b>mōtus</b> , move, influence, break up ( <i>camp</i> ).	<b>rapīna</b> , <b>rapīnae</b> , <i>f.</i> , plunder; <i>pl.</i> , plundering.
<b>pābulātiō</b> , <b>pābulātiōnis</b> , <i>f.</i> , foraging, procuring fodder.	<b>sēnī</b> , <b>sēnae</b> , <b>sēna</b> , six each, six apiece.
	<b>subsistō</b> , <b>subsistere</b> , <b>substitī</b> , make a stand, halt.

### IDIOMS

**quās in partēs**, in what direction?

**iter facere**, to march.

**novissimum agmen**, the rear.

**aliēnō locō**, in an unfavorable place.

**satis habēbat prohibēre**, deemed it sufficient to prevent, was satisfied with preventing. *etc.*

**nōn numquam**, sometimes.

**quīna milia passuum**, five miles each (*day*).

#### SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Meanings of the Comparative Degree. (2) Accusative of Duration. (3) Ablative of Place. (4) Partitive Ablative. (5) Ablative of Comparison. (6) Ablative of Separation. (7) Relative Clause of Purpose. (8) Result Clause. (9) Indirect Question. (10) Participle with *Habēō*. (11) Number of a Relative whose Antecedent is a Collective Noun.

**A.** (1) 291. *a*; (2) 423; (3) 429; (4) 346. *c*; (5) 406; (6) 401; (7) 531. 2; (8) 537; (9) 573 *f*.; (10) 497. *b*; (11) 280, *a*; 306, *b*.

**B.** (1) 240; (2) 181; (3) 228, 1, *b*; (4) 201, 1. *a*; (5) 217; (6) 214, 2; (7) 282. 2; (8) 284; (9) 300; (10) 337. 7; (11) 250, 4.

**G.** (1) 297, 2; (2) 336; (3) 385, N. 1; (4) 372. R. 2; (5) 398; (6) 390, 2; (7) 630; (8) 552; (9) 467; (10) 241, N. 2; (11) 614, 3, *a*.

**HB.** (1) 241, 2; (2) 387, II; (3) 436; (4) 346. *e*; (5) 416, *d*; (6) 408, 2; (7) 502. 2; (8) 521, 2; (9) 537, *b. c*; (10) 605, 5; (11) 331. 1.

**H.** (1) 498; (2) 417; (3) 485, 2; (4) 444; (5) 471; (6) 462; (7) 590; (8) 570; (9) 649, II; (10) 640. 2; (11) 397.

TRANSLATE: Quās in partēs hostēs iter faciunt? Equitēs vidēbunt quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Equitātum omnem praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Equitēs cupidius novissimum agmen īsecūtī sunt. Aliēnō locō proelium committunt. Helvētīi subsistere nōn numquam coepērunt. Caesar satis habēbat hostem rapīnīs prohibēre. Inter hostēs et Rō-

mānōs nōn amplius quīnque mīlibus passuum intererat.  
Diēs quīndecim nōn amplius quīnīs mīlibus passuum  
intererat.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XV.



*Through this valley the Helvetians marched, while Caesar followed  
five or six miles behind.*

## CHAPTER XVI, FIRST PART

### VOCABULARY

āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āver-  
sus, turn away, estrange.

comportō, comportāre, com-  
portāvī, comportātus, col-  
lect, bring in.

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī,  
conlātus, bring together,  
collect, compare, ascribe,  
defer.

cotidiē, *adv.*, daily, every day.

**flāgitō, flāgitāre, flāgitāvī.**

**flāgitātus,** demand.

**frīgus, frīgoris, n.,** cold, cold weather ; *pl.*, frosts.

**frūmenta, frūmentōrum (pl. of frūmentum), n,** standing grain.

**mātūrus, mātūra, mātūrum,**  
ripe, early.

**pābulum, pābulī, n.,** fodder, green fodder.

**pūblicē, adv.,** publicly, as a state.

**subvehō, subvehere. subvexī, subvectus,** bring up.

### IDIOMS

**nē. . . quidem,** not even. The emphatic word comes between *nē* and *quidem*.

**minus poterat,** he could not. *Minus* is simply a milder negative than *nōn*.

**diem ex diē dūcunt,** they put him off from day to day.

### SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Two Accusatives with Verbs of Asking. (2) Ablative with *Ūtor*. (3) Ablative of the Route. (4) Informal Indirect Discourse. (5) Historical Infinitive (= Imperfect Indicative).

**A.** (1) 396 ; (2) 410 ; (3) 429, *a* ; (4) 592 ; (5) 463.

**B.** (1) 178, 1, *a* ; (2) 218, 1 ; (3) 218, 9 ; (4) 323 ; (5) 335.

**G.** (1) 339 ; (2) 407 ; (3) 401 ; (4) 508, 3 ; (5) 647.

**HB.** (1) 393 ; (2) 429 ; (3) 426 ; (4) 535, 1, *a* ; (5) 595.

**H.** (1) 411 ; (2) 477 ; (3) 476 ; (4) 649, 1 ; (5) 610.

TRANSLATE: Haeduī frūmentum erant pūblicē pollicītī. Gallia sub septentrionibus posita est. Propter frīgora frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant. Nē pābulī quidem cōpia suppetēbat. Frūmentum flūmine subvexerat. Eō frūmentō ūtī minus poterat. Diem ex diē dūcēbant Haeduī. (Frūmentum) cōferri dicēbant.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XVI as far as *dīcere*.



## CHAPTER XVI, LAST PART

## VOCABULARY

**accūsō, accūsāre, accūsāvī, accūsātus**, accuse, blame, find fault with.

**annuus, annua, annum, adj.**, for a year, annual.

**convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus**, call together, summon.

**dēstituō, dēstituere, dēstitūī, dēstitūtus**, abandon, desert.

**diūtius** (*compar. of diū*), longer, too long.

**emō, emere, ēmī, ēemptus**, buy, purchase.

**instō, instāre, institī, instātūrus**, press on, be at hand, threaten.

**Liscus, Liscī, m.**, Liscus, *chief magistrate of the Haeduans in 58 B. C.*

**mētiōr, mētīrī, mēsusus**, measure, deal out, distribute.

**nex, necis, f.**, death, violent death.

**precēs,<sup>1</sup> precum, f.**, prayers, entreaties.

**propinquus, propinqua, propinquum**, near, related; *pl.*, relatives.

**sublevō, sublevāre, sublevāvī, sublevātus**, lighten, raise up, assist.

## IDIOMS

**magistrātui praeerat**, held office.

**tam necessariō tempore**, at so critical a time.

**magnā ex parte**, to a large extent.

**tam propinquis hostibus**, with the enemy so near.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Dative with Compounds. (2) Two Accusatives with Verbs of Calling. (3) Ablative of Attendant Circumstances. (4) Causal *Cum*-Clause. (5) Subjunctive in a Causal *Quod*-Clause. (6) Narrative Time Clause. (7) Infinitive as Subject of *Oportet*. (8) Imperfect Sub-

---

<sup>1</sup> The singular of this word is rare except the ablative, *precē*.

junctive, a Means of expressing Past-future<sup>1</sup> Ideas.  
(9) Subjunctive by Attraction.

**A.** (1) 370; (2) 393; (3) 419; (4) 549; (5) 540, N. 2; (6) 543; (7) 454; (8) 511, N. 1; (9) 593.

**B.** (1) 187, III; (2) 177, 1. 3; (3) 221; (4) 286, 2; (5) 286, 1; (6) 287, 1; (7) 327, 1; (8) 269, 2; (9) 324, 1.

**G.** (1) 347; (2) 340; (3) 409; (4) 586; (5) 541; 542; (6) 561; (7) 535; (8) 277, 4; (9) 663.

**HB.** (1) 376; (2) 392; (3) 422, 1; (4) 526; (5) 535, *a*, N. 2; (6) 557; (7) 585; (8) 508; 509; (9) 539.

**H.** (1) 429; (2) 410; (3) 489; (4) 598; (5) 588; (6) 602; (7) 615; (8) 541, 2; (9) 652.

TRANSLATE: *Diēs instat quō diē frūmentum militibus mētīrī oportēbit. Diēs instābat quō diē frūmentum mētīrī oportēret. Liscus summō magistrātūī praeerat. Neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī potest frūmentum. Graviter eōs accūsāt quod ab iīs nōn sublevētur. Magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēpit.*

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XVI, LAST PART.

## CHAPTER XVII

### VOCABULARY

**anteā**, *adv.*, before, previously.

**coērcēō**, **coērcēre**, **coērcuī**,

**coērcitus**, confine, restrain.

**dēmum**, *adv.*, at last, at length.

**dēterreō**, **dēterrēre**, **dēterrui**,

**dēterrītus**, frighten off, prevent.

**improbus**, **improba**, **improbū**, bad, wicked, reckless.

**perferō**, **perferre**, **pertulī**, **per-**

<sup>1</sup> Future from a past point of view; *e.g.* he said that he would come to-morrow.

<b>lātus</b> , bear through, endure, submit to.	great, how much, as great as, as.
<b>privātim</b> , <i>adv.</i> , privately, as private persons.	<b>sēditiōsus</b> , <b>sēditiōsa</b> . <b>sēditiō-</b> <b>sum</b> , seditious, factious.
<b>prōpōnō</b> , <b>prōpōnere</b> , <b>prōpo-</b> <b>suī</b> , <b>prōpositus</b> , place be- fore, state, make known.	<b>taceō</b> , <b>tacēre</b> , <b>tacui</b> , be silent, keep secret, conceal.
<b>quantus</b> , <b>quanta</b> , <b>quantum</b> , <i>rel. and interrog. adj.</i> , how	<b>tum</b> , <i>adv.</i> , then.

## IDOMS

**quam diū**, as long as ; how long ?

**nōn nulli**, some.

**praestat**, it is better.

**quīn etiam**, nay even.

**plūrimum valēre**, avail very much, be very strong.

**plūs posse**, avail more, have more influence, have greater power.

**dēterrēre nē cōferant**, prevent from furnishing.

**unā cum**, along with.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Subjective Genitive. (2) Dative with Verbs of Taking Away. (3) Accusative of Degree. (4) Ablative of Attendant Circumstances. (5) Volitive Substantive Clause with Verbs of Hindrance. (6) Descriptive Clause. (7) Substantive *Quīn*-Clause with Verbs of Doubt. (8) *Quod*-Clause of Respect. (9) Infinitive as Subject. (10) Causal Participle.

**A.** (1) 343, N. ; (2) 381 ; (3) 390, c ; (4) 412, a ; (5) 558, b ; (6) 535, a ; (7) 558 ; (8) 572, a ; (9) 452, 1 ; (10) 496.

**B.** (1) 199 ; (2) 188, 2, d ; (3) 176, 2, b, 3 ; (4) 221 ; (5) 295, 3 ; (6) 283, 2 ; (7) 298 ; (8) 299, 2 ; (9) 330 ; (10) 337, 2, f.

**G.** (1) 363, 1 ; (2) 345, R. 1 ; (3) 334 ; (4) 392 ; (5) 548 ; (6) 631, 2 ; (7) 555, 2 ; (8) 525, 2 ; (9) 422 ; (10) 666.

**HB.** (1) 344 ; (2) 371 ; (3) 387, III ; (4) 422, II, 2 ; (5) 502,

3, *b*; (6) 521, 1; (7) 521, 3, *b*; 470, 4, *a*; (8) 552, 2; (9) 585; (10) 604, 2.

H. (1) 440, 1; (2) 427; (3) 416, 2; (4) 473, 3; (5) 566; (6) 591, 1; (7) 595, 1; (8) 588, 3. N.; (9) 615; (10) 638, 1.

TRANSLATE : Liscus (id) quod tacuerat prōpōnit. Auctōritās nōn nullōrum plurimum valet. Sunt nōn nulli quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plurimum valeat. Nōn nulli privātum plūs possunt quam ipsi magistrātus. Hi multitudinem dēterrent nē frūmentum cōferant. Frūmentum cōferre dēbent. Iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possunt. Praestat Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre. Nōn dubitāre dēbēmus quīn Rōmāni Haeduis libertātem sint ereptūrī. (Ea) quae in castris geruntur hostibus enūntiantur. Hi ā mē coērcēri nōn possunt. Quantō id cum periculō fēcī? Intellegō quantō id cum periculō fēcērīm. Quam diū potui tacui.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XVII.

## CHAPTER XVIII. FIRST PART

### VOCABULARY

**audācia, audāciae, *f.*** boldness, daring.

**concilium, concili, *n.*** meeting, council.

**conventus, conventus, *m.*** assembly, court.

**dēsīgnō, dēsīgnāre, dēsīgnāvi, dēsīgnātus.** indicate, mean.

**dīmīttō, dīmīttēre, dīmīsī,**

**dīmīssus.** send away. let go, dismiss.

**īactō, īactāre, īactāvi, īactātus.** toss, toss about, discuss.

**liberālītās, liberālītātis, *f.*** generosity.

**liccor, licēri, licitus,** bid (*at an auction*).

**portōrium, portōri, *n.*** toll, customs, duty.

<b>praesēns</b> , <i>Gen.</i> , <b>praesentis</b> , <i>adj.</i> , present.	<b>tentus</b> , hold back, detain, re- tain.
<b>redimō</b> , <b>redimere</b> , <b>redēmī</b> , <b>redēptus</b> , buy back, pur- chase, buy up.	<b>sēcrētō</b> , <i>adv.</i> , privately.
<b>reperiō</b> , <b>reperire</b> , <b>repperī</b> , <b>re-</b> <b>pertus</b> , find, find out, learn.	<b>sentiō</b> , <b>sentire</b> , <b>sēnsī</b> , <b>sēnsus</b> , perceive, know, think.
<b>retineō</b> , <b>retinēre</b> , <b>retinuī</b> , <b>re-</b>	<b>vectīgal</b> , <b>vectīgālis</b> , <i>n.</i> , tax, tribute, revenue.
	<b>vērus</b> , <b>vēra</b> , <b>vērum</b> , true.

## IDioms

**plūribus praesentibus**, in the presence of too many.

**ipse est**, he is the very man.

**rēs novae**, a change in government, revolution.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Objective Genitive. (2) Accusative of Duration.  
(3) Construction with *Quaerō*. (4) Subject of an In-  
finitive. (5) Conditional Ablative Absolute. (6) Ab-  
lative of Attendant Circumstances. (7) Ablative of  
Price. (8) Descriptive Ablative. (9) Indirect Dis-  
course. (10) *Habeō* with a Participle.

**A.** (1) 349, *a*; (2) 423, 2; (3) 396, *a*; (4) 397, *e*; (5) 420, 4;  
(6) 420, 5; (7) 416; (8) 415; (9) 580, *a*; (10) 497, *b*.

**B.** (1) 204; (2) 181; (3) 178, *a*; (4) 184; (5) 227, 2, *b*;  
(6) 221; (7) 225; (8) 224; (9) 314; (10) 337, 7.

**G.** (1) 374, 5; (2) 336; (3) 339, R.1.; (4) 343, 2; (5) 667;  
(6) 409; (7) 404; (8) 400; (9) 650; (10) 238.

**HB.** (1) 354; (2) 387, II; (3) 393, *c*; (4) 398; (5) 421, 6;  
(6) 422, I; (7) 427; (8) 443; (9) 534, 1, 2; (10) 605, 5.

**H.** (1) 451; (2) 417; (3) 411, 4; (4) 415; (5) 489, 1;  
(6) 489; (7) 478; (8) 473, 2; (9) 642, 1; 643; (10) 640, 2.

TRANSLATE: *Hāc oratione Dumnorix designatur.*  
*Caesar oratione Liscī Dumnorigem designari sentiebat.*

Quaerit ex Liscō sōlō ea. Haec sunt vēra. Ipse est Dumnorīx magnā apud plēbem grātiā. Dumnorīx est cupidus rērum novārum. Portōria vectīgāliaque parvō pretiō redēmit. Complūrēs annōs omnia vectīgālia redēpta habet. Illō licente contrā licērī audet nēmō.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XVIII as far as *nēmō*.

## CHAPTER XVIII, SECOND PART

### VOCABULARY

<b>alō, alere, alui, altus</b> , nourish, support, keep.	<b>largior, largiri, largitus</b> , give freely, bribe.
<b>Biturigēs, Biturigum</b> , <i>m.</i> , a tribe of Gauls west of the <i>Huedui</i> .	<b>largiter</b> , <i>adv.</i> , abundantly.
<b>conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvi, conlocātus</b> , place, arrange, give.	<b>nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūpta</b> , veil one's self, marry ( <i>of the bride</i> ).
<b>familiāris, familiāre</b> , <i>adj.</i> , of the household, private, intimate.	<b>potentia, potentiae</b> , <i>f.</i> , power, influence.
<b>illīc</b> , <i>adv.</i> , there, in that place.	<b>semper</b> , <i>adv.</i> , always.
	<b>soror, sorōris</b> , <i>f.</i> , sister.
	<b>sūmptus, sūmptūs</b> , <i>m.</i> , expense.

### IDIOMS

- rēs familiāris**, private property.  
**largiter posse**, have very great influence.  
**huius potentiae causā**, for the sake of this influence.  
**soror ex mātre**, half-sister.  
**sorōrem nūptum conlocāsse** (=conlocāvisse), had given his sister in marriage.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Genitive with *Causā*. (2) Dative with Compounds. (3) Ablative of Means. (4) Locative. (5) Gerund. (6) Accusative Supine.

A. (1) 359, *b*; (2) 370; (3) 409; (4) 427, 3; (5) 506; (6) 509.

B. (1) 198, I; (2) 187, III; (3) 218; (4) 232, 2; (5) 338, 3; (6) 340, 1, *b*.

G. (1) 373; (2) 347; (3) 401; (4) 411, 2; (5) 432; (6) 435.

HB. (1) 444, *d*; 339, *d*; (2) 376; (3) 423; (4) 449, *a*; (5) 612, III; (6) 618 and footnote 2.

H. (1) 475, 2; (2) 429; (3) 476; (4) 483; 484, 2; (5) 628; (6) 634.

TRANSLATE: Dumnorīx suam rem familiārem auxit. Facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāvit. Magnum numerum equitātūs alit et circum sē habet. Etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter potest. Huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī potentissimō conlocāvit. Ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habet. Sorōrem ex mātrem nūptum in aliam cīvitātem conlocāvit.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XVIII as far as *cīvitātēs conlocāsse*.

## CHAPTER XVIII, LAST PART

## VOCABULARY

**adfinitās, adfinitātis, *f.***, relationship. alliance.

**adversus, adversa, adversum,** opposite, unfavorable.

**antīquus, antīqua, antīquum,** old, ancient.

**cupiō, cupere. cupīvī, cupītus,** desire, be eager for, wish well for.

**dēminuō, dēminuere, dēminuī, dēminūtus,** lessen, impair.

equester, equestris, equestre, of the cavalry.	perterreō, perterrēre. perter- ruī, perterritus, frighten, terrify, alarm.
faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, be favorable to, favor.	restituō, restituere, restitui, restitūtus, set up again, re- store.
honor, honōris, <i>m.</i> , respect, honor, office.	
ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, <i>perf.</i> with <i>present meaning.</i> hate.	

## IDIOMS

suō nōmine, on his own account.

in quaerendō, upon making inquiry.

imperio populī Rōmānī. under the rule of the Roman people.

in spem venīre, entertain hope.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Indefinite Pronoun *Quis*. (2) Dative of Purpose.  
(3) Dative with *Faveō*. (4) Dative of Reference. (5) Ab-  
lative of Attendant Circumstances. (6) Ablative of the  
Measure of Difference. (7) *Quod*-Clause of Respect.  
(8) Gerundive.

A. (1) 310, *a*; (2) 382, 1; (3) 367; (4) 376; (5) 404;  
(6) 414; (7) 572, *a*; (8) 504.

B. (1) 91, 5; (2) 191, 2, *b*; (3) 187, 11, *a*; (4) 188; (5) 221;  
(6) 223; (7) 299, 2; (8) 339.

G. (1) 315; (2) 356; (3) 346; (4) 350, 2; (5) 408; (6) 403,  
4; (7) 525, 2; (8) 428.

HB. (1) 276, 1; (2) 360, *b*; (3) 362; (4) 366; (5) 422, I;  
(6) 424; (7) 552, 2; (8) 612. I, IV.

H. (1) 512, 1; (2) 433; (3) 426; (4) 425, 4; (5) 475; (6) 479,  
3; (7) 588, 3, N.; (8) 626.

TRANSLATE: Favet et cupit Helvētiīs. Ōdit suō nō-  
mine Caesarem. Sī quid Rōmānīs accidit, summam in  
spem rēgnī obtinendī venit. Imperio populī Rōmānī dē



rēgnō dēspērat. Proelium adversum paucīs ante diēbus factum erat. Quod proelium adversum factum erat, initium fugae ab Dumnorīge factum est. Equitātum auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī miserant. Equitātū Dumnorīx praeerat. Eōrum fugā reliquus est equitātus perterritus.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XVIII, LAST PART.

## CHAPTER XIX

### VOCABULARY

<b>animadvertō, animadvertere,</b>	<b>offēnsiō, offēnsiōnis, f.,</b> offense, hurting.
<b>animadvertī, animadversus,</b> attend to, notice, punish.	<b>removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtus,</b> move back, remove, dismiss.
<b>commonefaciō, commonefacere, commonefēcī, commonefactus,</b> remind, admonish.	<b>repugnō, repugnāre, repugnāvī, repugnātūrus,</b> resist, oppose.
<b>iniussū, m.,</b> only in abl., without orders, without command.	<b>sēparātīm, adv.,</b> separately, privately.
<b>īnsciēns, Gen., īnscientis, adj.,</b> not knowing, unaware.	<b>supplicium, supplicī, n.,</b> punishment ( <i>by death</i> ).
<b>interpres, interpretis, m.,</b> an interpreter.	<b>temperantia, temperantiae, f.,</b> self-control, discreetness.
<b>iūstitia, iūstitiae, f.,</b> justice, uprightness.	
<b>offendō, offendere, offēndī, offēnsus,</b> strike against, hurt.	

### IDIOMS

**obsidēs dandōs cūrāre,** arrange the giving of hostages.  
**satis causae,** sufficient reason, enough (of) cause.  
**in eum animadvertere,** punish him.  
**alicui fidem habēre,** have confidence in some one.

**ipsō praesente**, in his own presence.

**causā cognitā**, after hearing his case.

**rēs certae**, unquestionable facts.

**inscientibus ipsīs**, without their knowledge.

#### SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Dative with *Repugnō*. (2) Ablative of Accordance. (3) Volitive Substantive Clause. (4) Substantive Clause of Fear. (5) Clause representing an Act Anticipated and Prepared For. (6) Clause of Propriety, Reasonableness, or Obligation with *Quārē*. (7) Causal *Cum*-Clause. (8) Indirect Question of Fact. (9) Substantive *Quod*-Clause. (10) Subjunctive by Attraction. (11) Object Infinitive. (12) Gerundive.

**A.** (1) 367; (2) 418, *a*; (3) 563; (4) 564; (5) 551, *b*; (6) 535, *a*; (7) 549; (8) 586; (9) 572; (10) 593; (11) 563, *a*; (12) 500, 4.

**B.** (1) 187, II, *a*; (2) 220, 3; see also 219, 2; (3) 295, 1; (4) 296, 2; (5) 292, 1, *a*; (6) 295, 7; (7) 286, 2; (8) 300; (9) 299, 1; (10) 324; (11) 331, II; (12) 337, 8, *b*, 2.

**G.** (1) 346; (2) 408, N. I; (3) 546; (4) 550, 2; (5) 577; (6) 631, 2; (7) 586; (8) 467; (9) 525, 1; (10) 663; (11) 423, N. 6; (12) 430.

**HB.** (1) 362; 363, 1; (2) 414, *a*; (3) 502, 3; (4) 502, 4; (5) 507, 4, *a*; (6) 513, 2; (7) 526; (8) 537, *b*; (9) 552, 1; (10) 539; (11) 587; (12) 612, III.

**H.** (1) 426; (2) 475, 3; (3) 565; (4) 567; (5) 605, II; (6) 591, 4; (7) 598; (8) 649, II; (9) 588, 3; (10) 652; (11) 565, 3; (12) 622.

TRANSLATE: Dumnorīx obsidēs dandōs cūrāvit. Ea omnia iniussū Caesaris et civitātis fēcit. Satis est causae quārē in eum animadvertat. Caesar Diviciāci summam in sē voluntātem cognōverat. Caesar cotīdiānōs inter-

pretēs remōvit; per C. Valerium Troucillum cum Divici-  
ācō conloquitur. Troucillō summam fidem habēbat. Quae  
dē Dumnorīge sunt dicta? Commonefacit quae sint dicta.  
Petit ut ipse dē eō causā cognitā statuāt.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XIX.

## CHAPTER XX, FIRST PART

### VOCABULARY

<b>adulēscētia, adulēscētiaē,</b> <i>f.</i> , youth.	<b>lacrima, lacrimae, f.</b> , a tear.
<b>amor. amōris, m.</b> , love, affec- tion.	<b>minuō, minuere, minui, mi- nūtus</b> , diminish, weaken, re- duce.
<b>complector, complecti, com- plexus</b> , clasp, embrace.	<b>nervus, nervi, m.</b> , sinew; <i>pl.</i> , power, force.
<b>crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crē- tus</b> , grow, increase, become strong.	<b>obsecrō, obsecrāre, obse- crāvi, obsecrātus</b> , implore, entreat.
<b>exīstimātiō, exīstimātiōnis,</b> <i>f.</i> , opinion, estimate, reputa- tion.	<b>perniciēs, perniciēi, f.</b> , ruin.
<b>frāternus, frāterna, frāter- num, adj.</b> , of a brother, brotherly.	<b>sciō, scire, scivi, scitus</b> , know.
	<b>volgus, volgi, (or vulgus, vulgi) n.</b> , <sup>1</sup> crowd, mass, common people.

### IDIOMS

**minimum posse**, have very little influence.  
**plūs dolōris**, more (of) trouble.

<sup>1</sup> Three nouns of the second declension ending in *-us* are neuter: *pelagus*, sea; *vīrus*, poison; *volgus*, throng.

**quā ex rē**, and on account of this (thing).

**quid gravius statuere**, pass too severe a judgment.

**quod sī**, but if.

**suā voluntāte factum**, done with his approval.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Use of *Quisquam*. (2) Accusative of Degree. (3) Ablative of Attendant Circumstances. (4) Ablative with *Ūtor*. (5) Locative. (6) Substitute for a Future Infinitive. (7) Substantive Clause of Actuality. (8) Substantive Clause of Request. (9) Gerundive.

**A.** (1) 312; (2) 390, *c*; (3) 412, *a*; (4) 410; (5) 427, 3; (6) 569, *a*; (7) 569, 3; (8) 563; (9) 506.

**B.** (1) 252, 4; (2) 176, 3; (3) 221; (4) 218, 1; (5) 232, 2; (6) 270, 3; (7) 297, 2; (8) 295, 1; (9) 339, 1.

**G.** (1) 317; (2) 334; (3) 399, N. 1; (4) 407; (5) 411, 2; (6) 248; (7) 553, 4, R. 3; (8) 546; (9) 432.

**HB.** (1) 276, 7; (2) 387, III; (3) 422, I, *a*; (4) 429; (5) 449, *a*; (6) 472, *c*; (7) 521, 3; (8) 530, 2; (9) 612, III.

**H.** (1) 513; (2) 416, 2; (3) 473, 3; (4) 477; (5) 484, 2; (6) 619, 2, 3; (7) 571, 1; (8) 565; (9) 628.

TRANSLATE: Sciō ego illa esse vēra; nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris capit. Cum ego plūrimum possem, per mē crēvit. Cum ille minimum posset, per mē crēvit. Hīs opibus Dumnorīx ad minuendam grātiam frātris utēbātur. Ego tamen amōre frāternō commoveor. Quod sī quid eī acciderit, nēmō existimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum (esse); quā ex rē tōtīus Galliae animī ā mē āvertentur. Dicit futūrum utī animī ā sē āvertantur.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XX as far as *āverterentur*.

## CHAPTER XX, LAST PART

## VOCABULARY

<b>adhibeō, adhibēre, adhibui,</b>	<b>loquor, loqui, locūtus,</b> speak,
<b>adhibitus,</b> call in, apply, use.	talk, say.
<b>condōnō, condōnāre, condō-</b>	<b>orō, orāre, orāvī, orātus,</b>
<b>nāvi, condōnātus,</b> pardon,	speak, beg, entreat.
forgive.	<b>praeteritus, praeterita, prae-</b>
<b>cōsōlor, cōsōlārī, cōsōlā-</b>	<b>teritum,</b> past, bygone.
<b>tus,</b> comfort, console.	<b>prēndō, prēndere, prēndī,</b>
<b>dexter, dextera or dextra,</b>	<b>prēnsus,</b> seize, take, grasp.
<b>dexterum or dextrum,</b> right	<b>reprehendō, reprehendere,</b>
( <i>not left</i> ).	<b>reprehendī, reprehēnsus,</b>
<b>dextra</b> ( <i>manus</i> ), <b>dextrae, f.,</b>	restrain, blame.
the right hand.	<b>vītō, vītāre, vītāvī, vītātus,</b>
<b>fleō, flēre, flēvi, flētus,</b> weep,	shun, avoid.
weep for.	

## IDIOMS

**rei pūblīcae iniūria,** the wrong done to the (Roman) state.  
**eius voluntātī condōnāre,** pardon in deference to his wish.  
**in reliquum tempus,** for the future.  
**tantī est,** is worth so much.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Objective Genitive. (2) Genitive of Indefinite Value. (3) Dative of Reference. (4) *Quibuscum*. (5) *Ut*-Clause of Purpose. (6) Volitive Substantive Clause. (7) Substantive Clause of Request without Connective. (8) Result Clauses. (9) *Cum*-Clause of Situation. (10) Indirect Question of Fact.

A. (1) 348; (2) 417; (3) 376; (4) 150, *d*; (5) 531, 1; (6) 563; (7) 565, *a*; (8) 537; (9) 546; (10) 586.

B. (1) 200; (2) 203, 3; (3) 188; (4) 142, 4; (5) 282; (6) 295, 1; (7) 295, 8; (8) 284, 1; (9) 288, B; (10) 300.

G. (1) 363, 2; (2) 379 f.; (3) 350, 2; (4) 413, R. 1; (5) 544; (6) 546; (7) 546, R. 2; (8) 552; (9) 585; (10) 651.

HB. (1) 354; (2) 356, 1; (3) 366; (4) 418, *a*; (5) 502, 2; (6) 502, 3; (7) 530, 2; p. 261, footnote 2; (8) 521, 2; (9) 524 (10) 537, *b*.

H. (1) 440, 2; (2) 448, 1; (3) 425, 4; (4) 182, 2; (5) 568; (6) 564, 1; (7) 565, 4; (8) 570; (9) 600, II; (10) 649, II.

TRANSLATE: Haec flēns ā Caesare petēbat. Dīvi-  
ciācum cōsōlātus Caesar rogat (ut) finem ōrandī faciat.  
Reī pūblicae iniūriam eius voluntātī condōnat. Tantī  
eius apud Caesarem grātia est ut reī pūblicae iniūriam  
eius voluntātī condōnet. Praeterita ego frātrī tuō con-  
dōnō. Quae Dumnorīx agat scīre potest.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XX, LAST PART.

## CHAPTER XXI

### VOCABULARY

**ascendō, ascendere, ascendī,**  
ascēnsus, climb up, mount,  
ascend.

**ascēsusus, ascēnsūs, *m.*, ascent,**  
acclivity.

**circuitus, circuitūs, *m.*, round-**  
about way, circuit.

**cōsīdō, cōsīdere, cōsēdī,**  
cōsēsūrus, sit down, halt,  
encamp.

**facilis, facile, easy.**

**L. Sulla, L. Sullae, *m.*, Lucius**  
Sulla, *a great Roman general*  
*and statesman.*

**M. Crassus, M. Crassī, *m.*,**

Marcus Crassus, *a wealthy*  
*politician and general.*

**P. Cōsīdīus, P. Cōsīdī, *m.*,**  
Publius Considius.

**perītus, perīta, perītum, ex-**  
perienced, skillful.

**praetor, praetōris, *m.*, a gen-**  
eral; a praetor, *a Roman*  
*magistrate next below consul*  
*in rank.*

**quālis, quāle, interrog. adj., of**  
what sort?

**renūntiō, renūntiāre, renūn-**  
**tiāvī, renūntiātus, bring**  
back word, report.

## IDIOMS

**sub monte**, at the foot of the mountain.

**dē tertiā vigiliā**, about the third watch.

**cum iis ducibus**, with those as guides.

**summum iugum**, the top of the ridge.

**prō practōre**, with the authority of a general.

**quid suī cōnsili sit**, what his plan is.

**reī militāris perītus habētur**, is considered skilled in military science.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Idiomatic Use of Adjectives. (2) Objective Genitive. (3) Accusative of Extent. (4) Ablative of Route. (5) Ablative of Time. (6) Relative Clause of Purpose.

**A.** (1) 293; (2) 349, *a*; (3) 425; (4) 429, *a*; (5) 423; (6) 531, 2.

**B.** (1) 241, 1; (2) 204, 1; (3) 181; (4) 218, 9; (5) 230; (6) 282, 2.

**G.** (1) 291, R. 2; (2) 374, 4; (3) 335; (4) 401; (5) 393; (6) 630.

**HB.** (1) 244; (2) 354; (3) 387, I; (4) 426; (5) 439; (6) 502, 2.

**H.** (1) 497, 4; (2) 450; 451; (3) 417; (4) 476; (5) 486; (6) 590.

**TRANSLATE:** Hostēs sub monte cōnsēdērunt. Cōnsēdērunt mīlia passuum ab ipsiūs castrīs octō. Quālis est nātūra montis? Quālis est in circuitū ascēnsus? (Explōrātōrēs) quālis sit nātūra montis cognōscant. Facilis est ascēnsus. Renūtiātum est facilem esse (ascēnsū). Labiēnum summum iugum montis ascendere iubet. P. Cōnsidius reī militāris perītissimus habēbātur. In exercitū L. Sullae fuerat.

**TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXI.**

## CHAPTER XXII

## VOCABULARY

<b>abstineō</b> , <b>abstinēre</b> , <b>abstinui</b> , <b>abstentus</b> , hold back, refrain.	<b>insigne</b> , <b>insignis</b> , <i>n.</i> , sign, badge, decoration.
<b>aecurrō</b> , <b>aecurrere</b> , <b>aecurrī</b> <i>and</i> <b>aceneurrī</b> , <b>accursūrus</b> , run up to, hasten to.	<b>intervallum</b> , <b>intervalli</b> , <i>n.</i> , interval, distance, space.
<b>admittō</b> , <b>admittere</b> , <b>admisi</b> , <b>admissus</b> , let go, commit, allow.	<b>praecepiō</b> , <b>praecepere</b> , <b>prae-</b> <b>cēpi</b> , <b>praeceptus</b> , anticipate, command, instruct.
<b>comperiō</b> , <b>comperire</b> , <b>com-</b> <b>peri</b> , <b>compertus</b> , learn, dis- cover.	<b>subducō</b> , <b>subducere</b> , <b>subdūxi</b> , <b>subductus</b> , draw up, with- draw.
<b>dēnique</b> , <i>adv.</i> , at last, finally.	<b>timor</b> , <b>timōris</b> , <i>m.</i> , fear, alarm.
<b>Gallieus</b> , <b>Gallica</b> , <b>Gallicum</b> , <i>adj.</i> , of the Gauls, Gallic.	

## IDIOMS

- prīmā lūce**, at daybreak.  
**equō admissō**, riding at full speed.  
**multō diē**, late in the day.  
**prō visō**, as seen, as a thing seen.  
**timōre perterritus**, panic-stricken.  
**summus mōns**, the top of the mountain.  
**quō cōsuērat intervallō**, at the usual distance.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

- (1) Dative with Compounds. (2) Ablative of Separation.  
 (3) Ablative of Measure of Difference with *Ab-*  
*sum*. *Longius* = *Longius quam*. (4) Ablative Absolute.  
 (5) Ablative of Attendant Circumstances. (6) Ablative  
 of Time. (7) Volitive Substantive Clause. (8) Adversative  
*Cum*-Clause of Situation. (9) Object Infinitive.



A. (1) 370; (2) 402; (3) 425, *b*; 407, *c*.; (4) 420, 5; (5) 412; (6) 423; (7) 566; (8) 549, N. 2; (9) 459.

B. (1) 187, III; (2) 214, 2; (3) 223; 217, 3; (4) 227, 2, *e*; (5) 221; (6) 230; (7) 295, 1; (8) 288, 1, B; 309, 3; (9) 331, 1, IV.

G. (1) 347; (2) 390, 2; (3) 403, N. 1; 296, R. 4; (4) 410; (5) 399; (6) 393; (7) 546, 2; (8) 587; (9) 530; 532.

HB. (1) 376; (2) 408, 3; (3) 424; 416, *d*; (4) 421, 8; (5) 422, I; (6) 439; (7) 502, 3, *a*; (8) 525; (9) 587; 589.

H. (1) 429; (2) 464; (3) 479, 3; 471, 4; (4) 489; (5) 473, 3; (6) 486; (7) 564, II; (8), 598; (9) 613.

TRANSLATE: Summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur. Ipse mille et quīngentīs passibus aberat; neque ipsius adventus cognitus erat. Cōnsidius equō admissō ad Caesarem accurrit; dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī. Caesar montem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluit. Id ego ā Gallicīs armīs cognōvī. Caesar Labiēnō praecēpit nē proelium committeret. Ā Caesare erat Labiēnō praeceptum nē proelium committeret. Sī Caesaris cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae erunt, undique in hostēs impetus fiet. Multō diē Caesar cognōvit montem ā suis tenērī. Helvētiī castra mōvērunt. Cōnsidius (id) quod nōn vīderat prō vīsō renūntiāvit.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXII.

## CHAPTER XXIII

### VOCABULARY

<b>L. Aemilius, L. Aemilī, m.,</b>	<i>Haeduanus, modern Mont</i>
Lucius Aemilius, <i>one of</i>	Beuvray.
<i>Caesar's minor officers.</i>	<b>bīduum, bīduī, n.,</b> a period of
<b>Bibracte, Bibractis, n., Bi-</b>	two days, two days.
<i>bracte, chief town of the</i>	<b>commūtō, commūtāre, com-</b>

<b>mūtāvī,</b> <b>commūtātus,</b> change, exchange.	<b>tīvum,</b> <i>adj.</i> , runaway ; <i>pl. as noun</i> , runaways.
<b>cōfidō, cōfidere, cōfīsus,</b> <i>semi-deponent verb</i> , trust, rely on, believe.	<b>interclūdō, interclūdere, interclūsī, interclūsus,</b> shut off, hinder.
<b>convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus,</b> turn around, change.	<b>postridiē,</b> <i>adv.</i> , on the following day.
<b>cōpiōsus, cōpiōsa, cōpiōsum,</b> full of supplies, wealthy, plentiful.	<b>prīdiē,</b> <i>adv.</i> , on the day before.
<b>decuriō, decuriōnis, m.,</b> decurion, commander of a squad of ten horsemen.	<b>prōspiciō, prōspicere, prōspexī, prōspectus,</b> look forward, provide for.
<b>duodēvigintī,</b> <i>indeclinable numeral</i> , eighteen.	<b>seu, same as sive,</b> or ; <b>seu . . . seu,</b> <i>correlatives</i> , either . . . or.
<b>fugitīvus, fugitīva, fugi-</b>	<b>supersum, superesse, superfuī,</b> be left over, remain, survive.

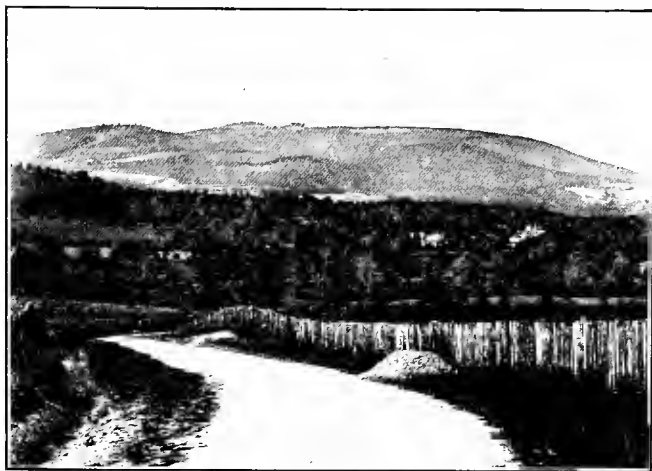
### IDIOMS

- postridiē eius diēi,** on the day after this (day).  
**rei frūmentāriae prōspicere,** provide for the grain supply.  
**eō magis,** all the more (more on account of this).  
**ā novissimō agmine,** from the rear.  
**itinere conversō,** changing the direction of their march.

### SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Genitive with *Postridiē*. (2) Accusative of Place to Which. (3) Dative of Reference. (4) Ablative of Separation. (5) Adversative Ablative Absolute. (6) Ablative of Degree with *Absum*. (7) Imperfect Subjunctive as a Past-future. (8) Subjunctive in a Causal *Quod*-Clause.

**A.** (1) 359, *b* ; (2) 427 ; (3) 376 ; (4) 401 ; (5) 420, 3 ; (6) 425, *b* ; (7) 511, footnote 1 ; (8) 540.



## MONT BEUVRAY

*Bibracte was situated on the summit of this hill.*

B. (1) 201, 3, *a*; (2) 182; (3) 188; (4) 214, 1; (5) 227, 2, *c*;  
(6) 223; (7) 269, 1, 2; (8) 286, 1, *a*.

G. (1) 362; (2) 337; (3) 350, 2; (4) 390, 2; (5) 667; (6) 403,  
N. 1; (7) 277, 4; (8) 541, 3.

HB. (1) 380, *c*; (2) 450; (3) 367; (4) 408, 2; (5) 421, 5;  
(6) 424; (7) 508; 509; (8) 535, 2, *b*, N.

H. (1) 446, 5; (2) 418; (3) 425, 2; (4) 462; (5) 489, 1;  
(6) 479, 3; (7) 541, 2; 545, II, 3; (8) 588, II, 1.

TRANSLATE: Exercitū frūmentum mētīrī oportēbit. Omnīnō bīduum superest cum frūmentum mētīrī oportēbit. Bīduum supererat cum frūmentum mētīrī oportēret. Ā Bibracte nōn amplius mīlibus passuum duodēvīgintī aberat. Reī frūmentāriae prōspiciam. Reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum mihi est. Reī frūmentāriae prōspicien-

dum (sibi esse) exīstimāvit. Timōre perterritī Rōmānī discēdunt ab Helvētiīs. Rōmānī pridīē, superiōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn commīsērunt. Rōmānī rē frūmentāriā interclūduntur. Rōmānī rē frūmentāriā interclūdī possunt. Eō, quod rē frūmentāriā (Rōmānōs) interclūdī posse cōnfiderent, commūtāvērunt cōnsilium.

### TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXIII.

## CHAPTER XXIV

### VOCABULARY

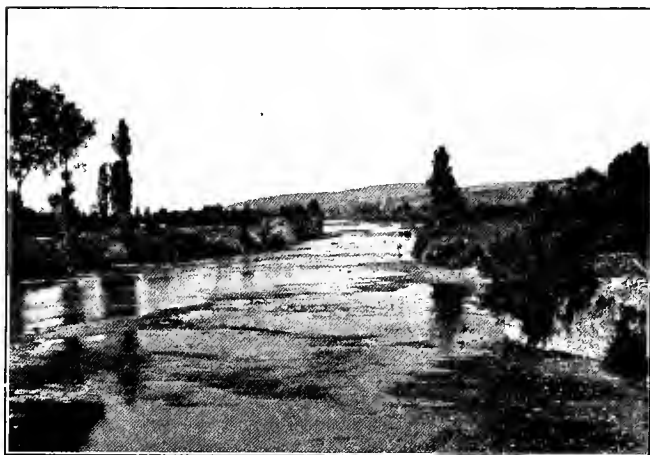
<b>advertō, advertere, adverti,</b>	throw back, hurl back. drive
<b>adversus,</b> turn towards, turn	back.
against, turn.	
<b>compleō, complēre, com-</b>	<b>sarcīna, sarcinae, f.,</b> pack,
<b>plēvi, complētus,</b> fill, fill up.	baggage carried by soldiers.
<b>cōnfertus, cōnferta, cōn-</b>	<b>succēdō, succēdere, successi,</b>
<b>fertum,</b> crowded, dense.	<b>successūrus,</b> come up, take
	the place of; prosper.
<b>impedimentum, impedī-</b>	<b>sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui,</b>
<b>mentī, n.,</b> hindrance; <i>pl.,</i>	<b>sustentus,</b> withstand, endure.
<i>(heavy)</i> baggage.	sustain, stop.
<b>phalanx, phalangis, f.,</b> a	<b>triplex, Gen., triplicis, adj.,</b>
phalanx, array ( <i>of troops</i> ).	threefold, triple.
<b>proximē, adv., (superl. of</b>	<b>veterānus, veterāna, vete-</b>
<b>prope),</b> lately, last, recently.	<b>rānum, adj.,</b> veteran.
<b>reiciō, reicere, reiēcī, reiectus,</b>	

### IDIOMS

**animum advertō,** notice, take notice of.  
**in colle mediō,** halfway up the hill.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Idiomatic Use of Adjectives. (2) Subjective Genitive. (3) Genitive of Material. (4) Relative Clause of Purpose. (5) Narrative Time Clause. (6) Infinitive as Object.



*Caesar encamped here the night before the battle.*

A. (1) 293; (2) 343; (3) 344; (4) 531, 2; (5) 543; (6) 563, a.

B. (1) 241, 1; (2) 199; (3) 197; (4) 282, 2; (5) 287, 1; (6) 331, II.

G. (1) 291, R. 2; (2) 363, 1; (3) 361; (4) 630; (5) 561; (6) 423, N. 6.

HB. (1) 244; (2) 344; (3) 349; (4) 502, 2; (5) 557; (6) 587.

H. (1) 497, 4; (2) 440, 1; (3) 440, 4; (4) 590; (5) 602; (6) 614.

TRANSLATE: Equitātum quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. In summō iugō collis duās legiōnēs con-

locārī iussit. Tōtum montem hominibus complērī iussit. Sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri et eum (locum) mūniri iussit.

### TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXIV.

## CHAPTER XXV, FIRST PART

### VOCABULARY

**aequō, aequāre, aequāvī, aequātus**, make equal, equalize.

**bracchium, bracchī, *n.***, an arm.

**cohortor, cohortārī, cohortātus**, encourage, exhort.

**commodē, *adv.***, advantageously, conveniently, readily.

**conligō, conligāre, conligāvī, conligātus**, bind together, fasten together.

**dēstringō, dēstringere, dēstrinxī, dēstrictus**, strip off, draw (*a sword*).

**disiciō, disicere, disiēcī, disiectus**, hurl apart, scatter, rout.

**ēvellō, ēvellere, ēvelli and ēvulsī. ēvulsus**, pull out.

**ictus, ictūs, *m.***, a stroke.

**inflectō, inflectere. inflexī, inflexus**, bend, bend down.

**nūdus, nūda, nūdum, *adj.***, naked, unprotected.

**perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfrāctus**, break through.

**pīlum, pīlī, *n.***, a javelin, *the distinctive weapon of the Roman legion*.

**praeoptō, praeoptāre, praeoptāvī, praeoptātus**, prefer.

**prīmum, *adv.***, first, at first.

**sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, *adj.***, left (*not right*); **sinistra, *f.***, the left hand.

**trānsfigō, trānsfigere, trānsfixī, trānsfixus**, pierce through.

### IDIOMS

**sē inflectere**, become bent.

**ad pugnam impedimentum**, a hindrance in fighting.

**Gallis impedimentō erat**, it was a hindrance to the Gauls.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Dative of Reference used with a Dative of Purpose. (2) Ablative of Separation. (3) Ablative Absolute. (4) Ablative of Manner. (5) Purpose Clauses. (6) Result Clauses. (7) Causal *Cum*-Clause. (8) Substantive *Quod*-Clause. (9) Complementary Infinitive.



MONTMORT

*From Cuesar's position on the Hill of Armecy.*

A. (1) 382, 1; (2) 401; (3) 420; (4) 412; (5) 531, 1; (6) 537; (7) 549; (8) 572; (9) 456.

B. (1) 191, 2, a; (2) 214, 2; (3) 227 entire; (4) 220; (5) 282; (6) 284; (7) 286, 2; (8) 299; (9) 328.

G. (1) 356; (2) 390; (3) 410; (4) 399; (5) 545; (6) 552; (7) 586; (8) 525; (9) 423.

HB. (1) 360, b; (2) 408; (3) 421 entire; (4) 445, 2; (5) 502, 2; (6) 521, 2; (7) 526; (8) 552, I; (9) 586.

H. (1) 433; (2) 464; (3) 489; (4) 473, 3; (5) 568; (6) 570; (7) 598; (8) 588, 3; (9) 607, 1.

TRANSLATE: Caesar primum suum equum removit; deinde omnium equos removit. Aequatum est omnium periculum. Aequatō omnium periculō spes fugae tollet. Caesar cohortatus suos (militēs) proelium commisit. Militēs ē superiōre locō pila mīserunt. Plūra scūta ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfīxa sunt. Scūta Gallōrum ūnō ictū pilōrum conligāta sunt, cum ferrua sē inflexisset. Neque ēvellere neque satis commodē pugnāre poterant. Gallis magnō ad pugnam impedimentō erat quod pila ē scūtīs ēvellere nōn poterant. Multī praeoptābant scūtum manū ēmittere.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXV as far as *corpore pugnāre*.

## CHAPTER XXV, LAST PART

### VOCABULARY

<b>apertus, aperta, apertum,</b> <i>adj.</i> , open, exposed, unprotected.	<b>sus,</b> become exhausted, become weary.
<b>bipertitō or bipartitō,</b> <i>adv.</i> , in two divisions.	<b>latus, lateris, n.</b> , side, flank.
<b>circumveniō, circumvenire,</b> <b>circumvēnī, circumventus,</b> surround.	<b>redintegrō, redintegrāre, red-</b> <b>integrāvī, redintegrātus,</b> renew.
<b>cōspicor, cōspiciārī, cōn-</b> <b>spiciātus,</b> catch sight of, see.	<b>rūsus, adv.</b> , again, back again.
<b>dēfetiscor, dēfetiscī, dēfes-</b>	<b>submoveō, submovēre, sub-</b> <b>mōvī, submōtus,</b> push back, dislodge, repulse.

### IDIOMS

**agmen claudere,** bring up the rear.

**ab latere apertō,** on the exposed side.

**captō monte,** when the mountain had been reached.



**conversa signa inferre**, face about and advance.

**ex itinere**, on the march.

**pedem referre**, retreat, fall back.

**novissimī**, those in the rear.

**sē recipere**, betake one's self, retreat.

#### SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Agreement of a Verb with Two Subjects forming but One Idea. (2) Dative of Reference used with a Dative of Purpose. (3) Dative with *Resistō*. (4) Accusative of Extent. (5) Ablative Absolute of Situation and Time.

**A.** (1) 317, *b*; (2) 382, 1; (3) 367; (4) 425; (5) 420, 5.

**B.** (1) 255, 3; (2) 191, 2, *a*; (3) 187, II, *a*; (4) 181; (5) 227.

**G.** (1) 211, R. 1; (2) 356; (3) 346; (4) 335; (5) 665.

**HB.** (1) 331, 3; (2) 360, *b*; (3) 362; (4) 387, I; (5) 421.

**H.** (1) 392, 4; (2) 433; (3) 426, 1; (4) 417; (5) 489.

TRANSLATE: Tandem hostēs pedem referre coepērunt. Boī agmen hostium claudēbant; novissimīs praesidiō erant. Ex itinere nostrōs adgressī sunt; nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressī circumvenīre coepērunt. Helvētīī rūrsus instāre coepērunt. Rōmānī convertērunt signa. Conversa signa bipertītō intulērunt. Prīma et secunda aciēs signa intulit ut victīs resisteret.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXV, LAST PART.

## CHAPTER XXVI

## VOCABULARY

<b>anceps</b> , <i>Gen.</i> , <b>ancepitis</b> , <i>adj.</i> , twofold, doubtful.	<b>obiciō</b> , <b>obicere</b> , <b>obiēcī</b> , <b>ob-</b> <b>iectus</b> , throw in the way of, present, expose.
<b>centum</b> ( <b>C</b> ), <i>indeclinable num-</i> <i>eral</i> , one hundred.	<b>raeda</b> ( <i>or</i> <b>rēda</b> ), <b>raedae</b> , <i>f.</i> , a wagon.
<b>hōra</b> , <b>hōrae</b> , <i>f.</i> , hour.	<b>sepultūra</b> , <b>sepultūrae</b> , <i>f.</i> , burial.
<b>intermittō</b> , <b>intermittere</b> , <b>inter-</b> <b>termisī</b> , <b>intermissus</b> , inter- rupt, stop, omit. let pass.	<b>subiciō</b> , <b>subicere</b> , <b>subiēcī</b> , <b>subiectus</b> , throw under, throw from under, subject, place near.
<b>iuvō</b> , <b>invāre</b> , <b>iūvī</b> , <b>iūtus</b> , help, aid.	<b>trāgula</b> , <b>trāgulae</b> , <i>f.</i> , a ( <i>Gallie</i> ) javelin.
<b>Lingonēs</b> , <b>Lingonum</b> , <i>Acc.</i> , <b>Lingonas</b> , <sup>1</sup> a <i>Gallie</i> nation northwest of the <i>Sequani</i> .	<b>triduum</b> , <b>triduī</b> , <i>n.</i> , a period of three days, three days.
<b>mātara</b> , <b>matarae</b> , <i>f.</i> , spear, pike ( <i>used by the Gauls</i> ).	<b>vāllum</b> , <b>vāllī</b> , <i>n.</i> , palisade, rampart. wall.
<b>moror</b> , <b>morāri</b> , <b>morātus</b> , lin- ger, delay, detain.	<b>vesper</b> , <b>vesperī</b> , <i>m.</i> , evening.
<b>nēve</b> , <i>continuing ut or</i> <b>nē</b> , or not, and not, nor.	

## IDIOMS

<b>alterī</b> . . . <b>alterī</b> , the one party . . . the other party.
<b>prō vāllō</b> , as a rampart, as a barricade.
<b>hōra septima</b> , the seventh hour ( <i>about one o'clock P.M.</i> ).
<b>āversum hostem</b> , the back of an enemy, an enemy turned in flight.
<b>eōdem locō habēre quō</b> , treat the same as
<b>ad multam noctem</b> , till late at night.
<b>triduō intermissō</b> , after an interval of three days.
<b>pugnātum est</b> , the fighting was carried on, the battle raged, they fought.
<b>quī sī</b> , if they.

---

<sup>1</sup> This foreign word does not have quite the same endings as a pure Latin word would.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Partitive Ablative. (2) Subjective Genitive. (3) Objective Genitive. (4) Object of *Ūtor*, etc. (5) Ablative of Place. (6) Ablative of Time. (7) Ablative of Manner. (8) *Cum*-Clause of Situation and Cause. (9) Adversative *Cum*-Clause. (10) Volitive Substantive Clause. (11) Hours of the Roman Day.

A. (1) 346, c; (2) 343, N. 1; (3) 348; (4) 410; (5) 429, 1, 2; (6) 423; (7) 412; (8) 549, N. 2; (9) 549; (10) 563.

B. (1) 201, 1, a; (2) 199; (3) 200; (4) 218, 1; (5) 228, 1, b; (6) 231, 1; (7) 220, 1; (8) 286, 2, (9) 309, 3; (10) 295, 1.

G. (1) 372, R. 2; (2) 363, 1; (3) 363, 2; (4) 407; (5) 385, N. 1; (6) 393; (7) 399; (8) 586; (9) 587; (10) 546.

HB. (1) 346, e; (2) 344; (3) 354; (4) 429; (5) 436; (6) 439; 440; (7) 445; (8) 525; (9) 526; (10) 502, 3; (11) 670.

H. (1) 444; (2) 440, 1; (3) 440, 2; (4) 477; (5) 485, 1, 2; (6) 487; (7) 473, 3; (8) 600, II, 1; (9) 598; (10) 565; (11) 756, 2.

TRANSLATE: *Alterī sē in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum est. Tōtō proeliō āversum hostem vīdit nēmō. Ad multam noctem pugnātum est. Prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant. Ex eō proeliō hominū mīlia centum trīgintā superfuērunt. Propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuērunt. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās mīsīt nē eōs frūmentō iuvārent. Sī eōs iūveritis, ego vōs eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs (habeō) habēbō.*

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXVI.

## CHAPTER XXVII

## VOCABULARY

**conquīrō, conquīrere, conquīsivī, conquīsitus**, search for, hunt up.

**dēditicius, dēditicia, dēditiciū, adj.**, surrendered.

**dēditiō, dēditiōnis, f.**, surrender.

**ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus**, go out.

**ignōrō, ignōrāre, ignōrāvī, ignōrātus**, fail to notice, not to know.

**inopia, inopiae, f.**, want, lack.

**occultō, occultāre, occultāvī, occultātus**, conceal, hide.

**perfugiō, perfugere, perfūgī, perfugitūrus**, run away, flee.

**poscō, poscere, poposci**, demand, claim.

**prōiciō, prōicere, prōiēcī, prōiectus**, throw forward, cast down, abandon.

**suppliciter, adv.**, as a suppliant, as suppliants.

**Verbigenus, Verbigenī, m.**, a *canton of the Helvetii*.

## IDIOMS

**flentēs**, in tears.

**suppliciō adficere**, punish (*with death*).

**primā nocte**, in the first part of the night.

**quī cum**, when these.

**ad pedēs**, at (his) feet.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Agreement according to Sense instead of Grammatical Gender. (2) Substantive Clause of Fear. (3) *Cum*-Clause of Situation. (4) Informal Indirect Discourse. (5) Irregular Subjunctive in a Causal *Quod*-Clause. (6) Narrative Time Clause. (7) *Dum*-Clause of Contemporaneous Act. (8) Use of Participles.

**A.** (1) 286, *b*; (2) 564; (3) 546, N. 1; (4) 592, 2; (5) 592, 3, N.; (6) 543; (7) 556; (8) 496.

**B.** (1) 235, B, *c*; (2) 296, 2; (3) 288, 1, B; (4) 323; (5) 286, 1, *a*; (6) 287, 1; (7) 293, I; (8) 337, 2, *c*; 337, 2, *f*).

**G.** (1) 211, R. 1, *b*; (2) 550, 2; (3) 585; (4) 508, 3; (5) 541, N. 3; (6) 561; (7) 570; (8) 664, R. 1; 666.

**HB.** (1) 323, 2; 325. (2) 502, 4; (3) 524; (4) 535, *a*; (5) 535, 2, *b*, N.; (6) 557; (7) 559; (8) 604, 2; 604, 5.

**H.** (1) 389, 2; (2) 567. (3) 600, II; (4) 649, I; (5) 588, II, 1; (6) 602; (7) 604, I; (8) 638.

TRANSLATE: Lēgātī Caesarem in itinere convēnerunt. Sē ad pedēs prōiēcērunt. Suppliciter locūtī pācem petierunt. Eōs exspectāre adventum suum iussit. Dum ea conquīruntur, hominum mīlia sex timōre perterritī ad Rhēnum contendērunt; timent nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō adficiantur. In tantā multitudīne eōrum fuga aut occultārī aut ignōrārī potest. Spē salūtis inductī ad finīs Germānōrum contendērunt.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXVII.

## CHAPTER XXVIII

### VOCABULARY

**atque**, *conj.*, and, and especially; *after expressions of likeness and comparison*, as, than.

**bonitās**, **bonitātis**, *f.*, goodness, excellence, fertility (*of soil*).

**condiciō**, **condiciōnis**, *f.*, agreement, condition, state,

**famēs**, **famis**, *f.*, hunger, starvation.

**frūx**, **frūgis**, *f.*, fruit, produce; *pl.*, crops.

**perfuga**, **perfugae**, *m.*, deserter, fugitive.

**pūrgō**, **pūrgāre**, **pūrgāvi**, **pūrgātus**. make clean, free from blame.

<b>ratio</b> , <b>rationis</b> , <i>f.</i> , reckoning, account, reason, plan.	<b>tolerō</b> , <b>tolerāre</b> , <b>tolerāvi</b> , <b>tolerātus</b> , bear, endure, hold out.
<b>redūcō</b> , <b>redūcere</b> , <b>redūxi</b> , <b>re-</b> <b>ductus</b> , lead back, bring back.	<b>unde</b> , <i>rel. and interrog. adv.</i> , whence, from which.
<b>resciscō</b> , <b>resciscere</b> , <b>rescivi</b> , <b>rescītus</b> , discover, learn.	<b>vacō</b> , <b>vacāre</b> , <b>vacāvi</b> , <b>vacātus</b> , be unoccupied, lie waste.

### IDIOMS

**in hostium numerō habēre**, treat as enemies.

**sibi pūrgātī**, free from blame in his sight.

**in dēditionem accipere**, receive their surrender.

**pār iūris condiciō atque ipsi erant**, a state of civil rights like  
that which they themselves enjoyed.

### SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Relative at the Beginning of a Sentence. (2) Dative with *Finitimī*. (3) Dative of Reference. (4) Descriptive Ablative. (5) Locative. (6) Potential Descriptive Clause of Availability. (7) Substantive Clause of Consent. (8) Narrative Time Clause. (9) Informal Indirect Discourse.

**A.** (1) 308, *f.*; (2) 384; (3) 378; (4) 415; (5) 427, 3; (6) 535; *a.*; (7) 563; (8) 543; (9) 592, 1.

**B.** (1) 251, 6; (2) 192; (3) 188; (4) 224; (5) 232, 2; (6) 283; (7) 295, 2; (8) 287, 1; (9) 323.

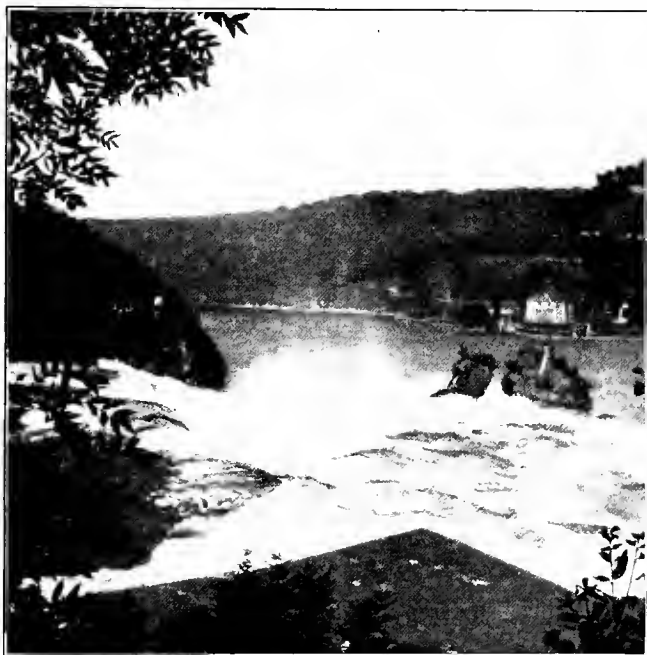
**G.** (1) 612; (2) 359; (3) 352; (4) 400; (5) 411, *R.* 2; (6) 631; (7) 553, 2; (8) 561; (9) 508, 3.

**HB.** (1) 284, 8; (2) 362, 111; (3) 370; (4) 443; (5) 449, *a.* (6) 517, 2; (7) 531, 2; (8) 557; (9) 535, 1, *a.*

**H.** (1) 510; (2) 434, 2; (3) 425, 4; (4) 473, 2; (5) 484, 2; (6) 591, 1; (7) 564; (8) 602; (9) 649, 1.

TRANSLATE: *Eōs redūcite, sī mihi pūrgātī esse vultis. Quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs utī (eōs) redūcerent imperā-*

vit. Reliquōs omniīs, obsidibus trāditīs, in dēditionem accēpit. Domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent. Nōluit eum locum vacāre. Germānī ē suis finibus in Helvētiō-



THE RHINE BETWEEN GERMANY AND HELVETIA

rum finēs trānsībunt. Finitimī Allobrogibus erunt. Boiī ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī. Haeduī Boiōs in suis finibus conlocābunt. Caesar Haeduīs ut Boiōs in suis finibus conlocārent concessit. Illī Boiōs in parem iūris libertātisque condiōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXVIII.

## CHAPTER XXIX

## VOCABULARY

<b>ad</b> , <i>prep. with acc.</i> , to, up to, for, near; <i>with numerals frequently an adv.</i> , about.	<b>quot</b> , <i>indeclinable rel. and interrog. adj.</i> , as many, as many as; how many?
<b>Graecus</b> , <b>Graeca</b> , <b>Graecum</b> , Greek, Grecian.	<b>sexāgintā</b> , <i>indeclinable numeral</i> , sixty.
<b>nōminātum</b> , <i>adv.</i> , by name, individually, expressly.	<b>summa</b> , <b>summae</b> , <i>f.</i> , total, sum, whole.
<b>nōnāgintā</b> , <i>indeclinable numeral</i> , ninety.	<b>tabula</b> , <b>tabulae</b> , <i>f.</i> , board, writing tablet, list, record.
<b>quattuordecim</b> , <i>indeclinable numeral</i> , fourteen.	<b>trecentī</b> , <b>trecentae</b> , <b>trecenta</b> , three hundred.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Interrogative Adjective. (2) Agreement of a Verb with the Predicate. (3) Predicate Genitive of Description. (4) Ablative of the Starting-point. (5) Descriptive Clause of Actuality. (6) Indirect Question.

**A.** (1) 148, *b*; (2) 316, *b*; (3) 345; (4) 427, 1; (5) 535; (6) 573.

**B.** (1) 90, 2; (2) 254, 3; (3) 198, 3; (4) 229, 1, *b*; (5) 283, 1; (6) 300, 1.

**G.** (1) 106; (2) 211, R. 1 (*c*); (3) 366; (4) 390, 2; (5) 631, 1; (6) 467.

**HB.** (1) 275, 4; (2) 332; (3) 355; (4) 451; (5) 521, 1; (6) 537, *b*.

**H.** (1) 511; (2) 390; (3) 447; (4) 462, 4; (5) 591, 1; (6) 649, II.

TRANSLATE: *Tabulae Helvētiōrum litterīs Graecīs cōnectae sunt. Tabulae ad Caesarem relātae sunt. Quī numerus domō exiit? Ratiō cōnecta erat quī numerus*



domō exisset. Erant capitum Helvētiōrum mīlia ducenta sexāgintā tria. Erant Tulingōrum mīlia trīgintā sex, Latobrīgōrum mīlia quattuordecim, Rauracōrum mīlia vīgintī tria, Boiōrum mīlia trīgintā duo. Ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo arma ferre poterant. Summa fuērunt ad milia trecenta sexāgintā octō. Mīlia centum et decem domum rediērunt.

### TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXIX

## CHAPTER XXX

### VOCABULARY

<b>commūnis</b> , <b>commūne</b> , <i>adj.</i> , common, general, public.	<b>permittō</b> , <b>permittere</b> , <b>permīsi</b> , <b>permissus</b> , intrust, permit, allow.
<b>cōnsensus</b> , <b>cōnsēnsūs</b> , <i>m.</i> , agreement, consent.	<b>sanciō</b> , <b>sancire</b> , <b>sānxi</b> , <b>sāuctus</b> , make sacred, make binding, ordain.
<b>domicilium</b> , <b>domicili</b> , <i>n.</i> , dwelling, abode.	<b>stipendiārius</b> , <b>stipendiāria</b> , <b>stipendiārium</b> , tributary, dependent.
<b>flōrens</b> , <i>Gen.</i> , <b>flōrentis</b> , <i>adj.</i> , flourishing, prosperous, influential.	<b>tametsi</b> , <i>conj.</i> , although.
<b>fructuōsus</b> , <b>fructuōsa</b> , <b>fructuōsum</b> , fertile, fruitful.	<b>terra</b> , <b>terrae</b> , <i>f.</i> , land.
<b>grātulor</b> , <b>grātulāri</b> , <b>grātulātus</b> , congratulate. <i>Dative</i> .	<b>ūsus</b> , <b>ūsūs</b> , <i>m.</i> , use, practice, experience, advantage.
<b>opportūnus</b> , <b>opportūna</b> , <b>opportūnum</b> , favorable, advantageous.	

### IDIOMS

**ab aliquō poenās repetere**, inflict punishment on some one.  
**ex ūsū alicuius**, to the advantage of some one.  
**flōrentissimae rēs**, the height of prosperity.

## SUBJECTS FOR STUDY AND REVIEW

(1) Subjective Genitive. (2) Objective Genitive. (3) Dative of the Concrete Object for Which. (4) Dative with Compounds. (5) Object of *Ūtor*, etc. (6) Ablative of Attendant Circumstances. (7) Volitive Substantive Clause. (8) Adversative Clauses. (9) Subjunctive by Attraction. (10) The Accusative Supine.

A. (1) 343, 1; (2) 348; (3) 382, 2; (4) 370; (5) 410; (6) 419; (7) 563; (8) 527, c; (9) 593; (10) 509.

B. (1) 199; (2) 200; (3) 191, 1; (4) 187, III; (5) 218, 1; (6) 221; (7) 295, 1; (8) 309, 2; (9) 324; (10) 340, 1.

G. (1) 353, 1; (2) 363, 2; (3) 356; (4) 347; (5) 407; (6) 410; (7) 546, 2; (8) 604; (9) 663; (10) 435.

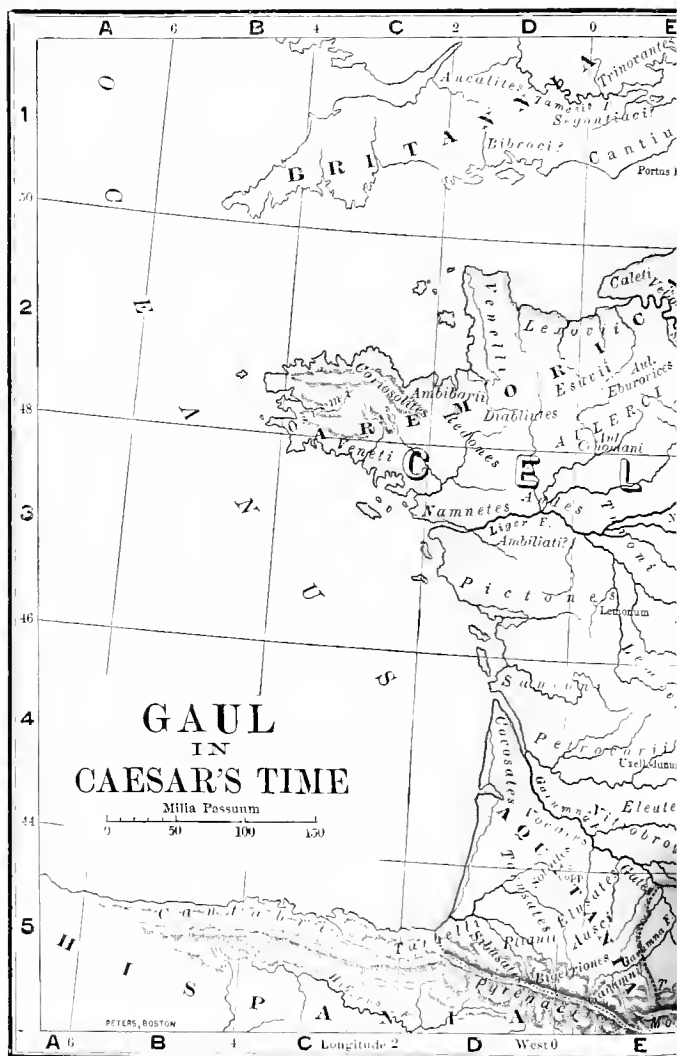
HB. (1) 344; (2) 354; (3) 361; (4) 376; (5) 429; (6) 422; (7) 502, 3; (8) 582, 8; (9) 539; (10) 618.

H. (1) 440, 1; (2) 440, 2; (3) 425, 3; (4) 429; (5) 477; (6) 473, 3; (7) 565; (8) 586; (9) 652; (10) 633.

TRANSLATE: Ea rēs ex ūsū populī Rōmānī accidit. Tametsī ab Helvētiīs poenās repetistī, tamen ea rēs ex ūsū terrae Galliae accidit. Intellegimus eam rem ex ūsū terrae Galliae accidisse. Lēgātī Caesarī grātulantēs dīxērunt intellegere sēsē eam rem ex ūsū populī Rōmānī accidisse. Eō cōsiliō domōs suās Helvētiī relīquērunt, utī tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent. Domōs suās relīquērunt utī imperiō potirentur. Locum domiciliō dēligent quem fructuōsissimum iūdicāverint. Domōs relīquērunt, utī domiciliō locum dēligerent quem fructuōsissimum iūdicāssent. Gallī petiērunt utī sibi concilium indicere liceret. Habēmus quāsdam rēs, quās ab tē petere volumus. Nē quis cōnūntiāret inter sē sānxērunt.

TRANSLATE CHAPTER XXX.









C. IULI CAESARIS  
BELLI GALLICI  
LIBER PRIMUS

*Note to the Student.*—Read carefully the Summary in English each time before attempting to translate the Latin.

*Caesar names the main divisions of "Gaul as a whole." The bravest are the Belgians, who are least subject to the refining influences of civilization and are in constant touch with the fierce Germans, their neighbors on the east.*

I. GALLIA est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana 5 dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; 10 proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

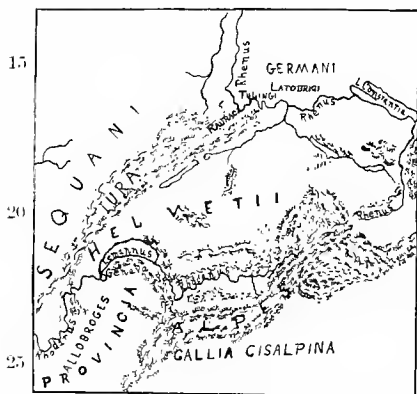
*The Helvetians are braver than the other Gauls and carry on constant warfare, both offensive and defensive, with the Germans. The boundaries of the three main divisions of "Gaul as a whole,"—Gaul, Belgium, Aquitania.*

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs

contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

Eorum una pars, quam Gallōs obtinere dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionem et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeos montēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.

*The Helvetians were persuaded by an ambitious nobleman to migrate from Switzerland and seek wider fields in other parts of Gaul, where they would have better opportunities to wage war with other tribes. Thus they believed they could establish their rule over all Gaul.*

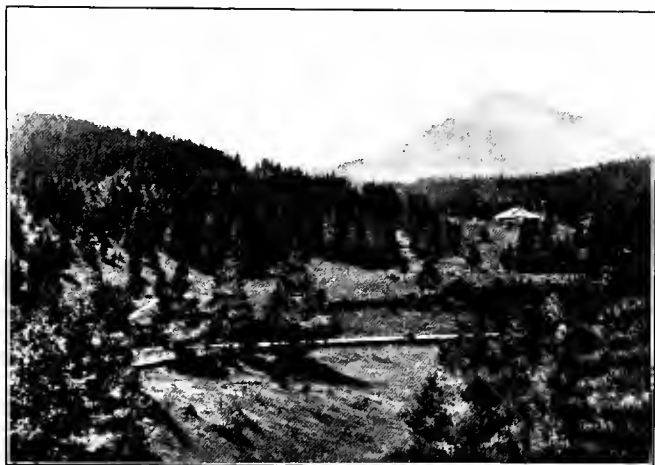


HELVETIA

II. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilitissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōsuli-bus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus

praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potiri.





MOUNT JURA NEAR THE SUMMIT

Id hōc facilius iīs persuāsit quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētīi continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētios; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētīs dīvidit.

*Extent of the Helvetian territory.*

Hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

*The Helvetians determine to procure wagons and supplies for their journey. It will take them two years to get ready.*

III. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiā cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

*They send Orgetorix on an embassy to establish friendly relations with the neighboring states. On this embassy he forms a plot with two other chieftains to secure for themselves the mastery over all Gaul.*

Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorīx dux dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnū in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnū in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerit; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Diviciāci, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubiū quān tōtīus Galliae plūrimū Helvētiī possent; sē suis cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat. Hāc ōratiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

*Orgetorix is brought to trial for treason, the penalty being death by fire. He escapes from the trial by unlawful means. The magistrates set about to enforce the law, and Orgetorix commits suicide.*

IV. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūtiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur. Diē cōstitutā causae dictionis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia<sup>5</sup> decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suos, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrā-<sup>10</sup>tūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quā ipse sibi mortem cōscīverit.

*Orgetorix's treachery and death did not change the Helvetians' determination to migrate. To prevent any inclination to turn back, they destroy their homes and even the grain, except what they were to take with them. They prevail upon some neighboring tribes to adopt their plan and join them; the Boii they admit as allies.*

V. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suis exeant.<sup>15</sup> Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcun portātūrī erant, combūrun, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula su-<sup>20</sup>beunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōsiliō, oppidīs suis vicīsque exustīs, ūnā cum iīs proficiscantur; Boiōs-

que, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum transierant Nōreiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

*Of the two routes possible for the Helvetians one, north of the Rhone, would lead through the difficult Pas de l'Écluse, where the river flows through a gap in the Jura Mountains; the other lay through the Roman province, which they could enter by crossing to the south bank of the river.*



PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE, looking downstream

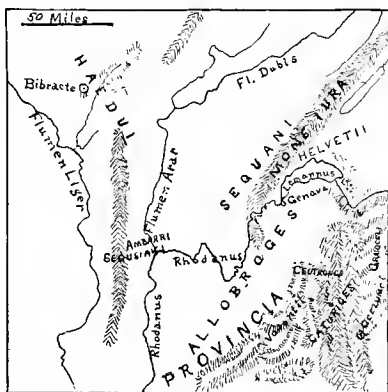
VI. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus  
5 domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et  
difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix  
quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōs autem altissimus  
impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alte-  
rum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expe-

dītius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nōn nullis locīs vadō trānsitur.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus

Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs, ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis diem dīcunt,

quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs 20 erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.



HELVETIA ON THE WEST

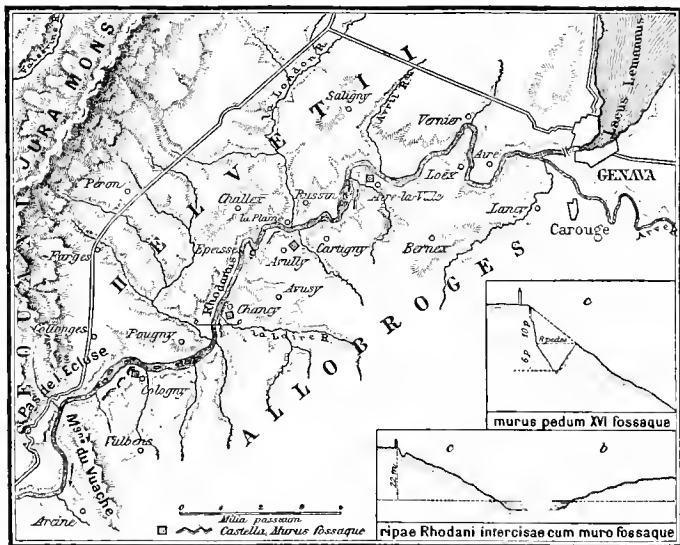
*Caesar is still in the vicinity of Rome, but on hearing of the intended inroad of the Helvetians, he rushes to his province and takes measures to prevent it. The Helvetians send ambassadors asking him to permit them to pass through the province.*

VII. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī, et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat, — erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna, — pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, inbet rescindī.

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiorēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgātōnis Nammeius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ullō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.

*Caesar does not intend to permit it, but in order to gain time he makes them wait for an answer.*

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub



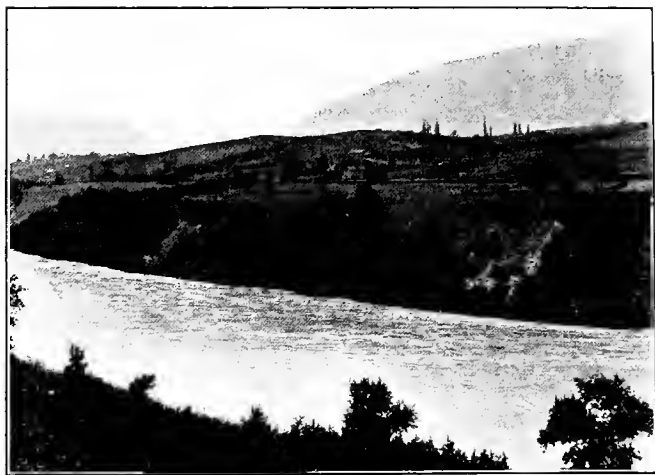
CAESAR'S FORTIFICATIONS ALONG THE RHONE

ingūm missum, concēdendū nō putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris

faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Id. Aprīl. reverterentur.

*With all his available troops Caesar fortifies the left bank of the Rhone for a distance of nineteen Roman miles by constructing walls and ditches and redoubts wherever there were no natural bluffs to prevent an enemy from crossing.*

VIII. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō,



THE RHONE JUST ABOVE CHANCY

*Narrow and deep; high bluffs; no fortifications needed here. Pas de l'Écluse in the distance.*

quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, milia passuum

xviii mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

*When the Helvetians were finally told that he would not permit them to go through the province, they tried unsuccessfully to force a way across.*

- 5 Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ullī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī eā



LOOKING UP THE RHONE JUST BELOW CHANCY  
*One of the places where the Helvetians tried to cross.*

spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, alīi vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn nunquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.



*The only other way would take them through the narrow pass in the land of the Sequanians. Through the intercession of Dumnorix, who has reasons of his own for undertaking the matter, they get permission to pass through this territory; and both nations take and give hostages as a pledge of good faith. (These hostages were generally princes or princesses, who were to be put to death in case their nation violated its pledge.)*

IX. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustīās ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātore ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitatē Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat, et cupiditātē rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās cīvitatēs suō beneficiō habere obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trāseant.

*Caesar's spies bring information concerning these plans. Such a migration would be dangerous to the Roman interests in Gaul. Realizing that the forces at hand are too small to cope with such a horde of barbarians, Caesar leaves his most able officer in charge and hurries into Cisalpine Gaul, calls out the seventh, eighth, and ninth legions from winter quarters, enrolls additional legions, and with these troops rushes back to farther Gaul, repelling numerous attacks of the mountaineers on the way.*

X. Caesarī nūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae cīvitas est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs,

populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs finitimōs habēret.

Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliā magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit, et trēs, quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliā per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit.

Ibi Centronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs locīs superioribus occupātis itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiorū ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

*The Helvetians had already passed into central Gaul and were making havoc of the fields of the Haeduans, who were the most loyal allies of the Romans in Gaul. On hearing their complaints, Caesar resolves to take prompt action.*

XI. Helvētīi iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōsesse, ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint.

Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessariī et cōsanguinei Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātis agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque

habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn expectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōsūptīs in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenirent.

5

*After getting information about the movements of the Helvetians, Caesar leaves camp soon after midnight with a suitable force and surprises an isolated division of the enemy.*

XII. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incredibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explorātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpi- 10  
ārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs adgressus magnam partem eōrum concidit; 15  
reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt.

*This very clan, which he surprised, had vanquished a Roman army in 107 B.C. and inflicted great humiliation on it.*

Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium 20  
cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum immortalīum, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae īsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās, sed etiam privātās 25  
iniūriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum,

L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

*After this battle Caesar bridges the Arar in order to overtake the rest of the Helvetians. Startled by his rapid movements, they send ambassadors to treat with him. They are ready for peace or war, but prefer peace and express a willingness to go and settle wherever Caesar wishes.*

XIII. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Divicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

10 Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae vir-

15 tūtis Helvētiōrum.

*"Don't have too much confidence in your prowess just because you attacked a helpless part of our people. The Helvetian way is to depend on valor, not trickery. Beware! In after years the place where we shall have taken a stand against you may be famous as the place where a Roman army was destroyed."*

Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī, quī flūmen trānsissent, suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent, quam dolō aut insidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus, ubi cōsti-

20

tissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

*Caesar's reply to the ambassadors: "I remember those misfortunes of the Roman people; and I am as much the more indignant as they were the less deserved. The state was taken off its guard; for it had wronged no one and had no grounds to fear hostilities."*

XIV. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō 5 minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius iniūriæ sibi cōsciū fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret.

*"Your recent wrongdoings deserve punishment even if I could forget the former ones. Your insolent boasting does not make me more kindly disposed to you. The gods sometimes grant a limited prosperity to wicked men whom they intend to punish."*

Quod sī veteris contumēliæ obliviscī vellet, num etiam 10 recentium iniūriarum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victoriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem 15 pertinēre. Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniorem impūnitātem concēdere.

*The conditions of peace are hostages and apologies. Divico's answer: The Helvetians are not in the habit of giving hostages.*

Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī 20 ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē

iniūriis, quās ipsīs sociisq̄ eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iis pācem esse factūrum.

Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suis institūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōsuērint; 5 eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

*The Helvetians move. Caesar follows them, using his cavalry to keep track of them. The rear guard of the enemy becomes bold, but Caesar steadily refuses battle.*

XV. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumq̄ omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atq̄ eōrum 10 sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit. quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam 15 multitudīnem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnis. pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusq̄ prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīn- 20 decim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus passuum interesset.

*Caesar has trouble in getting supplies. The Haeduans had asked him to aid them against the Helvetians and had promised supplies in the name of the state. But they kept giving excuses instead of grain.*

XVI. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter

frīgora quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat, proptereā ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī 5 Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī; cōferri, comportārī, adesse dīcere.

*Finally Caesar summons the chiefs and chides them for their indifference and treachery.*

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum 10 prīncipibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātūī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vitae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, 15 tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab iīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

*The leaders of the anti-Roman party among the Haeduanus are doing all that is possible to prevent Caesar from getting supplies. The chief magistrate confesses his inability to suppress their activities.*

XVII. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, 20 quod antea tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōn nullōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrere, nē frūmentum cōferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum 25

Galliae obtinere nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitare dēbere quīn, sī Helvētios superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab īsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coactus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

*Caesar privately inquires about the behavior of Dumnorix and learns that he has great influence and farms the revenues. (Among the Haeduan the revenues, together with the privilege of collecting them, were sold to the highest bidder; these "farmers of the revenue" made great profits by collecting much more from the people than they had paid to the state.)*

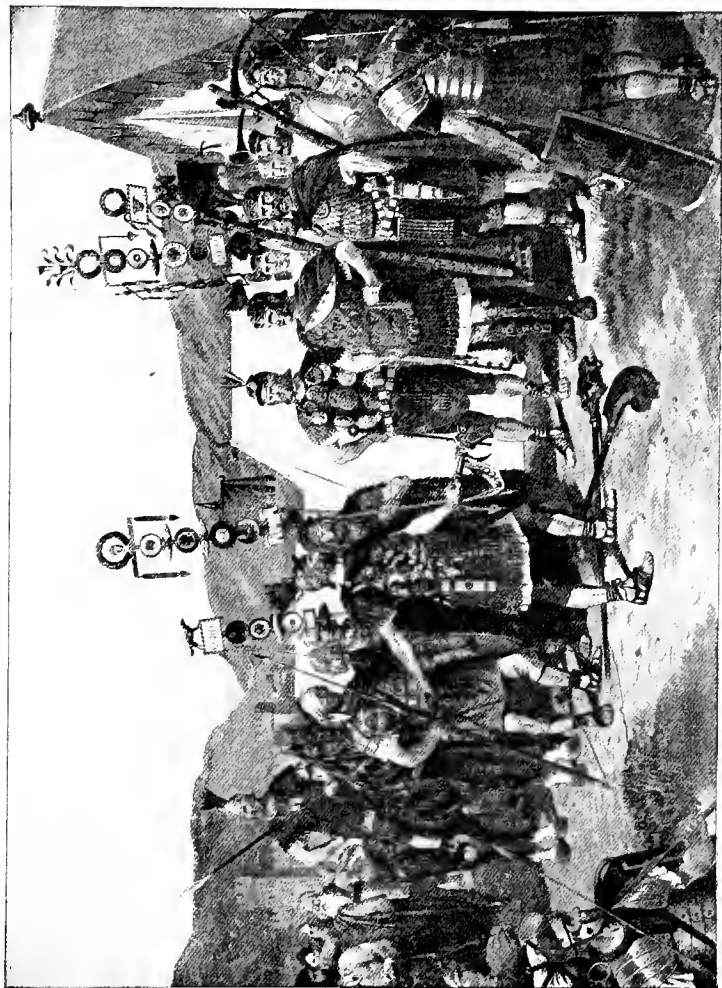
10 XVIII. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviaciāī frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxerat. Dicit liberius atque audācius.

15 Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēpta habēre, 20 proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō.

*The sources of Dumnorix's great power: wealth, a large body of retainers, personal alliances with powerful men in other states.*

Ilīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē





SCENE IN A ROMAN CAMP



habēre, neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimās civitatēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā matrem in Biturigibus hominī illīc nobilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxorem habēre, sororem ex matre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitatēs conlocāsse.

*Dumnorix favors the Helvetians and is treacherous to the Romans.  
He has good reason for this.*

Favere et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam adfinitatem, odisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiaē atque honoris sit restitūtus. 10 Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre.

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium 15 equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque eius equitibus — nam equitatuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī miserant, Dumnorix praeerat; — eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

20

*Notwithstanding these treasonable acts of Dumnorix, Caesar hesitated to punish him for fear of hurting the feelings of Dumnorix's brother Diviciacus, whose fidelity to Caesar and the Roman cause in Gaul could not be doubted. Caesar confers with Diviciacus through a trusted interpreter.*

XIX. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et civitatīs,

sed etiam inscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitatē animadvertere iubēret.

5 Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam, nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et,  
10 cotidiānīs interpretibus remōtīs, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in  
15 conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā statuatur vel cīvitatē statuere iubeat.

*Dīviciacus confesses that his brother makes him lots of trouble on his own account as well as on account of the Romans. But he fears to have him punished and begs Caesar not to do so.*

XX. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem com-  
20 plexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per sē crēvisset;  
25 quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn solum ad minnendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset

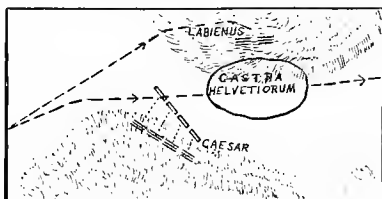
cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nēmīnem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.

*Caesar is moved by Diviciacus's tears. (Perhaps, too, he thought it unwise at this critical time to arouse the resentment of the Haeduanus by inflicting punishment on their favorite leader.) He forgives Dumnorix's past as a favor to his brother. Nevertheless Caesar intends to watch Dumnorix closely.*

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat fīnem 5 orandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, utī et rē pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvītās querātur, prōpōnit; monet 10 ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Diviciacō frātī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

*By means of scouting parties Caesar obtains information about the enemy and the surrounding country. He arranges a plan of battle and hastens toward the enemy.*

XXI. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus 15 hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsiūs castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, quī cognōscerent, mīsīt. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. La-



biēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōibus et iīs ducibus, quī iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōsiliī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris perītissimus habēbatur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

*Caesar's plan was working well, when a timorous officer brought him unreliable information about the movements of the enemy, which led Caesar to believe that his plans had failed. Caesar assumes the defensive. Through scouts he discovers the error.*

XXII. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs uōn longius mille et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēuī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem instruit.

Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, moute occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēuīque diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nō vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

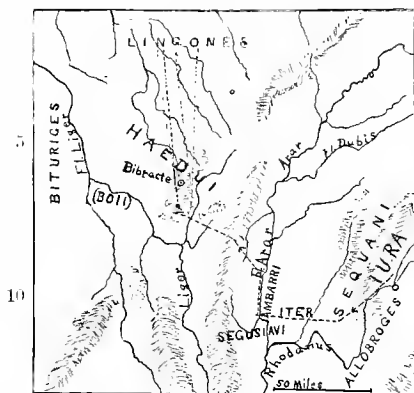


GALLIC SOLDIER, STANDARD-BEARER, AND OFFICER

*Lack of supplies compels Caesar to change his plans. The enemy takes the offensive.*

XXIII. Postrīdiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīdūum supererat, cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit.

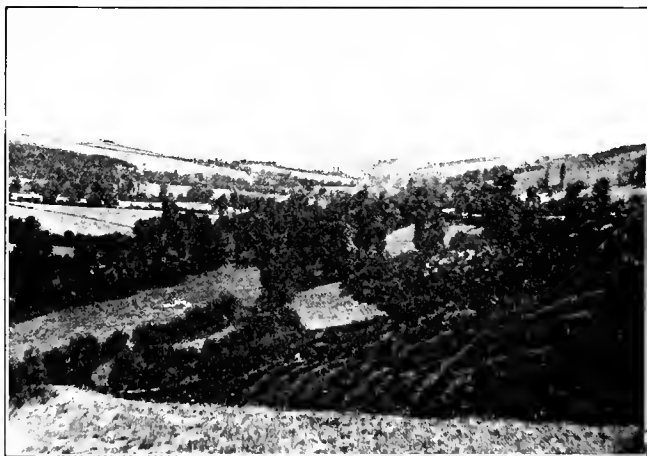
Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre



CENTRAL GAUL

perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātis proelium nōn commisissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōfiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō

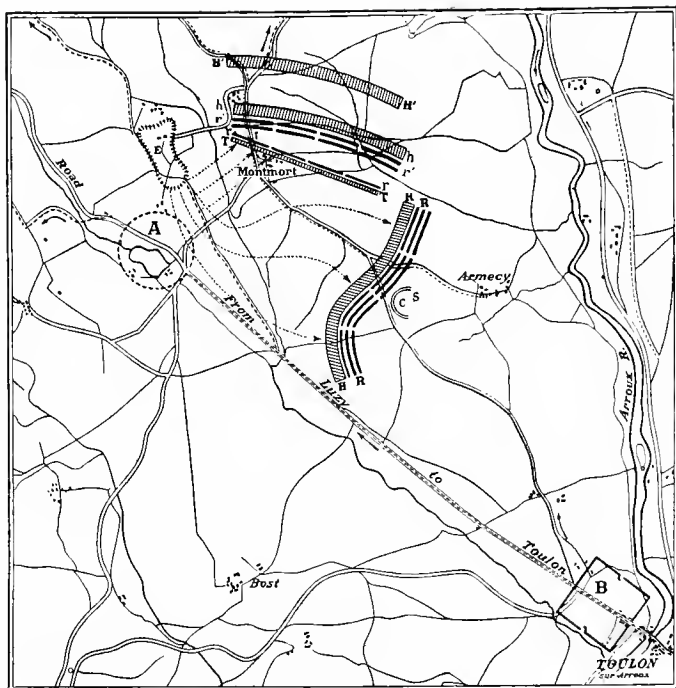
15 agmine īnsequi ac lacescere coepērunt.



*From watching down this valley the Helvetii turned back to attack Caesar.*





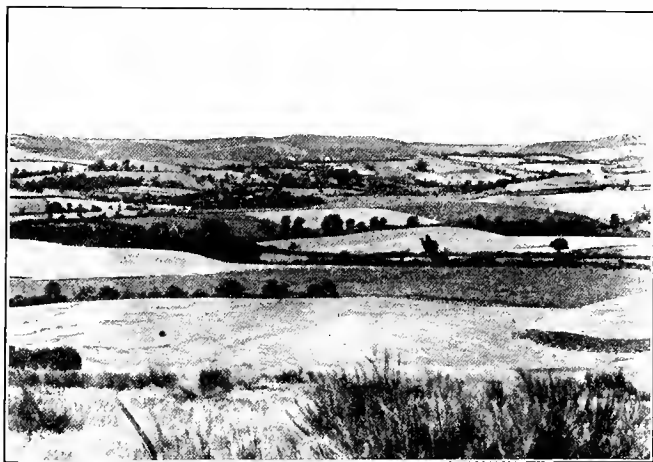


Milia passuum  
0 1 2  
THE BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>A. Helvetian camp on morning of battle.</p> <p>B. Roman camp on morning of battle.</p> <p>S. Summit of hill of Armecey.</p> <p>C. Intrenchment made by recruits.</p> <p>RR. Four veteran legions in line of battle.</p> <p>HH. Helvetii in first attack.</p> <p>H'H. Helvetii in retreat.</p> <p>TT. Boii and Tulingi.</p> | <p>r'. Roman 1st and 2d lines facing Helvetii.</p> <p>rr. Roman 3d line facing Boii and Tulingi.</p> <p>hh. Helvetii renewing attack.</p> <p>E. Helvetian baggage in park.</p> <p>——. Roman line of march.</p> <p>-----. Helvetian line of march.</p> |
|---|---|

*Caesar arranges his forces for battle. He occupies an advantageous position, nevertheless the Helvetians advance to the attack.*

XXIV. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in 5 Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat et omnia auxilia conlocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complēri, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri, et eum ab iīs quī in superioriōre aciē cōstitierant mūniri iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum 10 contulērunt; ipsī, cōfertissimā aciē reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.



*View from Caesar's position on the hill, showing the ground over which the Helvetians passed in making the attack.*

*Caesar compels all his officers to dismount. His men meet the charge of the enemy in the usual way by hurling their javelins and then charging with drawn swords. The line of the Gauls was so dense that their shields overlapped and were in many instances fastened together by the javelins of the Romans.*

XXV. Caesar, primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilīs missis facile hostium phalan-  
gem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictis in eōs  
impetum fecērunt.



JAVELIN (PILUM)



SWORD (GLADIUS)



SWORD IN SHEATH

Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtis ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et conligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere  
neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre pote-  
rant, multī ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent. scūtum  
manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre.

*The Gauls retreat to a mountain. As the Romans follow, the Boii and Tulingi attempt a flank movement, and the Helvetians renew the attack.*

Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mille passūs, eō sē recipere coepē-  
runt.

Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Boiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudē-  
bant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab

latere apertō adgressī circumvenīre, et id cōspicātī Helvētīi, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertītō intulērunt; prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac submōtis resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret. 5

*After a desperate battle the Romans are successful. The flight of the enemy continues night and day. Caesar warns the neighboring tribes that he will treat them as enemies, if they give aid to the Helvetians.*

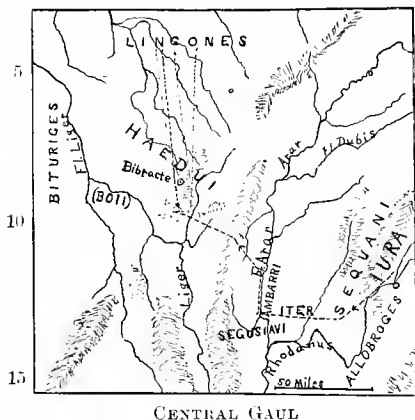


HILL TO WHICH THE HELVETIANS RETREATED  
*From the position of Caesar's right wing.*

XXVI. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum 10

pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est,

propterea quod prō vallō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nullī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgeto-



rīgis filia atque ūnus ē filiīs captus est.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia cxxx superfu-  
 20 ērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem  
 noctis itinere intermissō, in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō  
 pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter  
 sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī  
 nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque  
 25 mīsīt, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī  
 iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse  
 trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.

*The Helvetians in great destitution humbly submit to Caesar. While the details of the surrender are being carried out, some of the Helvetians attempt to escape into Germany.*

XXVII. Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in

itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pārūerunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. 5



SITE OF THE FINAL STRUGGLE AROUND THE BAGGAGE

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā circiter hominum mīlia vi eius pāgī, quī Verbigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs supplicio adficerentur, sive spē salutis inductī, quod in tantā multitudīne dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut 10 omnīnō ignōrārī posse exīstimārent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

*These fugitives, brought back by Caesar's orders, are put to death or sold into slavery. The rest of the Helvetians and their allies he orders to return to Switzerland and rebuild their towns and villages. But he permits the Boii to remain with the Haeduans.*

XXVIII. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et reducerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numero habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs  
5 in dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iīs frūmentī cō-  
pīam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant,  
10 restituere iussit.

Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitatem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs finibus in Helvētiōrum fluēs trānsīrent et finitimī Galliae  
15 prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in finibus suīs conlocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātisque condiōnem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

*The census before and after the attempted migration.*

20 XXIX. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātīm ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm quot puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum om-  
25 nium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium cclxiii, Tulingōrum mīlium xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiiii.



Rauracōrum xxiii, Boiōrum xxxii; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo.

Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia cccclxviii. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

5

*After the war the Gallic chieftains assemble to congratulate Caesar and take measures to enlist his aid against a common foe.*

XXX. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, princīpēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt:

Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetisset, 10 tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidissee, proptereā quod eō cōsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī reliquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex 15 omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac fructuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent.

Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere liceret; sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās ex commūnī cōsensū ab 20 eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre iūrاندō nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.



# VOCABULARY

Numbers preceded by G. refer to chapters in the Gallic War, where the word is given in full in the special vocabulary.

- A.**, abbreviation for **Aulus**, -ī, *praenomen of Postumius*. 68.
- ā**, **ab**, *prep. with abl.*, from, away from; *with passive verbs*, by.
- abdō**, -dere, -didī, -ditus, put away, remove, hide. G. 12.
- abdūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead away, take away. G. 11.
- abeō**, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, go away, go forth, depart. 61.
- abstineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentus (**absteneō**), hold back, refrain. G. 22.
- absum**, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus, be away from, be absent, be wanting. 47.
- ac**, same as **atque**, and.
- accēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (**ad-cēdō**), approach, advance, come to, be added. 56.
- acceptus**, -a, -um, acceptable, liked. G. 3.
- accidō**, -ere, -cidī (**ad-cadō**), fall upon, come to, happen, *with dat.* 76.
- accipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (**ad-capiō**), receive, accept, get. 42.
- accurrō**, -ere, -curri and -cucurri, -cursūrus (**ad-currō**), run up to, hasten to. G. 22.
- accūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, accuse, blame, find fault with. G. 16.
- ācer**, ācris, ācre, *adj.*, keen, sharp, active. 27.
- aciēs**, -ēī, *f.*, sharp edge, battle line, keen glance (of the eyes). 70.
- ācritēr**, *adv.*, fiercely, sharply. 10.
- ad**, *prep. with acc.*, to, up to, near; *with gerund*, for; *with numerals, an adv.*, about. 11.
- addūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead to, bring, induce. G. 3.
- adferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bring, render. 54.
- adficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (**ad-faciō**), affect, afflict, visit with. G. 2.
- adfinītās**, -tātis, *f.*, relationship, alliance. G. 18.
- adgredior**, -ī, -gressus (**ad-gra-dior**), go towards, march against, attack. G. 12.
- adhibeō**, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus (**ad-habeō**), call in, apply, use. G. 20.
- admiror**, -ārī, -ātus, be surprised, wonder at, admire. G. 14.
- admittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus, let go, commit, allow. G. 22.
- adorior**, -irī, -ortus, attack, assail. G. 13.

- adsciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scītus, attach, receive, admit. G. 5.
- adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be present, stand by, support. 73.
- adulēscētia, -ae, *f.*, youth. G. 20.
- adventus, -ūs, *m.*, a coming, arrival. 74.
- adversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, opposite, unfavorable. G. 18.
- advertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, turn towards, turn against, turn. G. 24.
- Aebutius, -ī, *m.*, Titus Aebutius, a Roman general. 68.
- aedificium, -ī, *n.*, a building. 13.
- aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, build, construct, 51.
- aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick. 57.
- aegrē, *adv.*, feebly, with difficulty, hardly. G. 13.
- Aemilius, -ī, *m.*, one of Caesar's minor officers. G. 23.
- aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make equal, equalize. G. 25.
- aes, aeris, *n.*, metal, copper, bronze; money; aes aliēnum, debt, debts. 71.
- aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. 24.
- aetās, -tātis, *f.*, age, time of life. 60.
- ager, agrī, *m.*, land, field. 12.
- agmen, agminis, *n.*, army on the march, column, line. 64.
- agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, drive, do. 21.
- agricola, -ae, *m.*, farmer. 1.
- Alba Longa, *f.*, an ancient city of Italy. 35.
- Albānus, -a, -um, belonging to Alba Longa, Alban; an Alban. 35.
- albus, -a, -um, white. 2.
- aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another, another's. 71.
- aliquis, aliquid (-quod), somebody, some one, something; some, any. 71.
- aliquot, *indecl.*, several, some. 69.
- alius, -a, -ud, another, other. 47.
- Allia, -ae, *f.*, a little stream flowing into the Tiber on the east side, eleven miles north of Rome. 77.
- Allobrogēs, -um, *Acc.*, -as *m.*, name of a Gallic tribe near Lake Geneva. G. 6.
- alō, -ere, alui, altus, nourish, support, keep. G. 18.
- Alpēs, -ium, *f.*, the Alps. 76.
- alter, -era, -erum, the other (of two), the second; alter . . . alter, *correl.*, the one . . . the other. 47.
- altitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, height, depth. G. 8.
- altus, -a, -um, high, deep, tall. 16.
- Ambarri, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of Gauls related to the Haeduans. G. 11.
- amicitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship. G. 3.
- amicus, -ī, *m.*, friend. 4.
- āmittō, -ere, āmisī, āmissus, lose. 62.
- amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, love. 6.
- amor, -ōris, *m.*, love, affection. G. 20.
- amplē, *adv.*, largely, fully; amplius, more. G. 15.
- an, *conj.* used in questions, or. 63.
- anceps, *Gen.*, ancipitis, twofold, doubtful. G. 26.
- Ancus Mārcius, fourth king of Rome. 50.
- angustiae, -ārum, *f.*, narrowness, narrow pass, difficulties. G. 9.
- angustus, -a, -um, narrow. 3.

- animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus**, attend to, notice, punish. G. 19.
- animus, -ī, m.**, mind, courage. 16.
- Aniō, Aniēnis, m.**, a river flowing into the Tiber a few miles north of Rome. 54.
- annus, -ī, m.**, a year. 16.
- annuus, -a, -um**, for a year, annual. G. 16.
- ānser, -eris, m.**, a goose. 78.
- ante, adv. and prep. with acc.**, before. 41.
- anteā, adv.**, before, previously. G. 17.
- antiquus, -a, -um**, old, ancient. G. 18.
- apertus, -a, -um**, open, exposed, unprotected. G. 25.
- appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, call, name. 34.
- Appius, -ī, m.**, name of a Roman. 69.
- Aprilis, -e, adj.**, of April. G. 6.
- apud, prep. with acc.**, with, in the presence of, among, at, near. 69.
- aqua, -ae, f.**, water. 5.
- Aquileia, -ae, f.**, a city of Cisalpine Gaul on the Adriatic Sea. G. 10.
- Aquitānī, -ōrum, m.**, the Aquitanians, a people living in the southwest part of Gaul. G. 1.
- Aquitānia, -ae, f.**, the country of the Aquitanians. G. 1.
- Arar, -aris, m.**, a river flowing into the Rhone at Lyons; modern Saône. G. 12.
- arbitror, -ārī, -ātus**, judge, think. G. 2.
- arceō, -ēre, arcui, trans.**, keep off, keep away. 16.
- Ardea, -ae, f.**, a city of ancient Italy, twenty miles south of Rome. 78.
- Ariovistus, -ī, m.**, a German king. 28.
- arma, -ōrum, n.**, implements, arms, weapons. 42.
- armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, arm, equip. 13.
- Arrūns, -untis, m.**, given name of one of the Tarquins. 64.
- ars, artis, f.**, art, skill. 33.
- arx, arcis, f.**, a citadel; at Rome it was one of the summits of the Capitoline hill. 77.
- ascendō, -ere, ascendi, ascēnsus**, climb up, mount, ascend. G. 21.
- ascēnsus, -ūs, m.**, ascent, acclivity. G. 21.
- atque or ac, conj.**, and also, and; as, than. 10.
- atingō, -ere, attigi, attāctus (adtangō)**, touch, reach, border upon. G. 1.
- auctōritās, -tātis, f.**, authority, influence. G. 3.
- audācia, -ae, f.**, boldness, daring. G. 18.
- audācter, adv.**, boldly. 29.
- audāx, Gen., audācis**, bold, daring. 30.
- audeō, -ēre, ausus, semi-dep.**, dare. 69.
- audiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus**, hear. 30.
- augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, trans.**, increase, enlarge. 25.
- aut, conj.**, or; either . . . or. 13.
- autem, conj.**, but, moreover, on the other hand. G. 2.
- auxilium, -ī, n.**, aid, help, reinforcements; *pl.*, auxiliary forces. 29.

- Aventīnus**, -ī, *m.*, one of the hills of Rome. 55.
- āvertō**, -ere, **āvertī**, **āversus**, turn away, estrange. G. 16.
- avus**, -ī, *m.*, grandfather. 11.
- Belgae**, -ārum, *m.*, the Belgians, a people living in the northeast part of Gaul. G. 1.
- bellicōsus**, -a, -um, warlike. G. 10.
- bello**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, fight, make war. G. 2.
- bellum**, -ī, *n.*, war. 24.
- bene**, *adv.*, well. 3.
- beneficium**, -ī, *n.*, service, favor, kindness. G. 9.
- Bibracte**, -tis, *n.*, chief town of the Haeduians, modern Mont Beuvray. G. 23.
- bīduum**, -ī, *n.*, a period of two days, two days. G. 23.
- biennium**, -ī, *n.*, two years. G. 3.
- bipertitō** (or **bipartitō**), *adv.*, in two divisions. G. 25.
- Biturīgēs**, -um, *m.*, a tribe of Gauls west of the Haeduians. G. 18.
- Boī**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Celtic tribe. G. 5.
- bonitās**, -tātis, *f.*, goodness, excellence, fertility (of the soil). G. 28.
- bonus**, -a, -um, good. 2.
- bracchium**, -ī, *n.*, arm. G. 25.
- brevis**, -e, short. 27.
- Brūtus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman. 59.
- C.**, abbreviation for **Cāius** (**Gāius**), a Roman praenomen. 24.
- cadō**, -ere, **cecidī**, **cāsūrus**, fall. 28.
- caedēs**, -is, *f.*, a killing, slaughter, carnage. 54.
- Caesar**, -aris, *m.*, a Roman name. 24.
- calamitās**, -tātis, *f.*, disaster, misfortune. G. 12.
- Camillus**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman general. 78.
- canis**, -is, *m.* and *f.*, a dog, watch-dog. 78.
- capiō**, -ere, **cēpī**, **captus**, take, seize, catch. 31.
- Capitōlium**, -ī, *n.*, one of the hills of Rome, the Capitoline. 55.
- captivus**, -ī, *m.*, captive, prisoner. 7.
- caput**, **capitis**, *n.*, head. 20.
- carcer**, -eris, *m.*, prison. 51.
- carrus**, -ī, *m.*, cart, wagon. G. 3.
- cārus**, -a, -um, dear, precious, valuable. 74.
- Cassiānus**, -a, -um, of Cassius, with Cassius. G. 13.
- Cassius**, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Cassius, consul 107 B.C. G. 7.
- castellum**, -ī, *n.*, fort, redoubt, stronghold. G. 8.
- Casticus**, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Sequani. G. 3.
- Castor**, -oris, *m.*, a hero of the olden times; he and his twin-brother Pollux were worshiped as gods at ancient Rome. 68.
- castra**, -ōrum, *n.*, camp. 24.
- cāsus**, -ūs, *m.*, accident, chance. G. 12.
- Catamantāloedēs**, -is, *m.*, a chief of the Sequani. G. 3.
- Caturīgēs**, -um, an Alpine tribe of Gauls. G. 10.
- causa**, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason, pretext, case (at law); *abl.*, **causā**.

- preceded by a gen., for the sake of.* 73.
- caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus,** be on one's guard, guard against. G. 14.
- celer, celeris, celere,** swift. 27.
- celeritās, -tātis, f.,** speed. 21.
- celeriter, adv.,** quickly. 14.
- Celtae, -ārum, m.,** the Celts or Gauls. G. 1.
- cēseō, -ēre, -suī, -sus,** estimate, give one's opinion, decree, determine, think. 63.
- cēnsus, -ūs, m.,** counting, numbering, census. 57.
- centum, indecl. num.,** one hundred. G. 26.
- certus, -a, -um,** sure, certain, trustworthy. **Certiōrem facere,** to inform. G. 7.
- Ceutronēs, -um, m.,** an Alpine tribe of Gauls. G. 10.
- cibārius, -a, -um,** pertaining to food. **Cibāria,** provisions. G. 5.
- cibus, -ī, m.,** food. 5.
- circiter, adv. and prep. with acc.,** around, about, near. G. 15.
- circuitus, -ūs, m.,** roundabout way, circuit. G. 21.
- circum, adv. and prep. with acc.,** around, about. G. 10.
- circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datus,** set around, surround. 57.
- circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus,** surround. G. 25.
- circus, -ī, m.,** circus, a place for celebrating games and holding contests. 55.
- citerior, -ius, comp. adj.,** nearer, hither; used of the Gallic province nearer Rome, Cisalpine Gaul. G. 10.
- citrā, adv. and prep. with acc.,** this side, on this side of. G. 12.
- civis, -is, m. and f.,** a citizen. 32.
- civitās, -tātis, f.,** citizenship, a state. 33.
- clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,** shout. 11.
- clāmor, -ōris, m.,** a shout. 26.
- clārus, -a, -um,** clear, bright, illustrious, famous. 16.
- claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus,** shut, close, shut up. 77.
- cliēns, -entis, m.,** a dependant, vassal. G. 4.
- Clūsinus, -a, -um,** of Clusium. 65.
- Cocles, -itis, m.,** cognomen of a Roman. 65.
- coemō, -ere, coēmī, coēptus,** buy up, purchase. G. 3.
- coepī, coepisse, coeptus (no pres.),** began, have begun. 65.
- coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus,** confine, restrain. G. 17.
- cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitus,** learn, ascertain, recognize; *perf.*, know. 39.
- cōgō, -ere, cōgī, cōactus,** collect, force, compel. 22.
- cohortor, -ārī, -ātus,** encourage, exhort. G. 25.
- Collātinus, -ī, m.,** a Roman. 61.
- collis, -is, m.,** hill. 26.
- colō, -ere, coluī, cultus,** till, cultivate, honor, worship. 76.
- combūrō, -ere, -bussī, -bustus,** burn, burn up. G. 5.
- commemorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,** mention. G. 14.
- commeō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus,** go to and fro, visit. G. 1.
- committō, -ere, -misī, -missus,** join, trust, allow, commit. G. 13.

- commodē**, *adv.*, advantageously, conveniently, readily. G. 25.
- commonefaciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, remind, admonish. G. 19.
- commoveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move, stir, disturb, alarm. G. 13.
- communiō**, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, fortify. G. 8.
- communis**, -e, *adj.*, common, general, public. G. 30.
- commūtatiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, a change. G. 14.
- commūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, change, exchange. G. 23.
- comparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, prepare, get ready, procure. G. 3.
- comperiō**, -īre, comperī, comper-tus, learn, discover. G. 22.
- complector**, complectī, complexus, clasp, embrace. G. 20.
- compleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, fill, fill up. G. 24.
- complūrēs**, complūra, *and* complūria, many, several. G. 8.
- comportō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, collect, bring in. G. 16.
- cōnātum**, -ī, *n.*, an attempt, undertaking. G. 3.
- cōnātus**, -ūs, *m.*, an attempt. G. 8.
- concēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *intr.* with *dat.*, retire, withdraw from, yield to; *trans.*, concede, allow, give up. 76.
- concidō**, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus (con-caedō), cut up, cut down, kill. G. 12.
- conciliō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, win over, secure, procure. G. 3.
- concilium**, -ī, *n.*, a meeting, council. G. 18.
- concursum**, -ūs, *m.*, a running together, onset, charge. G. 8.
- condiciō**, -ōnis, *f.*, agreement, condition, state. G. 28.
- condōnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, pardon, forgive. G. 20.
- condūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, bring together, collect, hire. G. 4.
- cōnferō**, -ferre, contulī, -lātus, bring together, collect, compare, ascribe, defer. G. 16.
- cōnfertus**, -a, -um, crowded, dense. G. 24.
- cōnficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, complete, accomplish, prepare, make. G. 3.
- cōnfidō**, -ere, cōnfisus, *semi-dep.*, trust, rely on, believe. G. 23.
- cōnfirmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, strengthen, establish, declare, assure. G. 3.
- cōnflagrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, burn, be consumed by fire. 43.
- coniciō** *or* coiciō, -ere, conieci, -iectus, (con-iaciō), throw, cast, hurl. 66.
- coniungō**, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, join, connect, unite. 51.
- coniūratiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, conspiracy. G. 2.
- conligō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bind together, fasten together. G. 25.
- conlocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, place, arrange, give. G. 18.
- conloquor**, -loquī, -locūtus, talk, confer, hold a conversation. 63.
- cōnor**, -ārī, -ātus, try, attempt. 48.
- conquirō**, -ere, -quisivī, -quisitus



- (con-quaerō), search for, hunt up. G. 27.
- cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, akin; *as noun*, kinsman. G. 11.
- cōnsciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scītus, resolve, take upon one's self; **mortem sibi cōnsciscere**, commit suicide. G. 4.
- cōnscius, -a, -um, knowing, conscious, aware of. G. 14.
- cōnscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus, enroll, enlist. G. 10.
- cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, agreement, consent. G. 30.
- cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, follow, overtake, secure. G. 13.
- Cōnsidius, -ī, *m.*, one of Cuesar's officers. G. 21.
- cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, sit down, halt, encamp. G. 21.
- cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, council, counsel, plan, stratagem. 39.
- cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, gain a footing, stand, halt, consist of. 78.
- cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus, comfort, console. G. 20.
- cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*, sight. G. 11.
- cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus, catch sight of, see. G. 25.
- cōnstituō, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtus, place, establish, appoint, resolve, determine. G. 3.
- cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, become accustomed; *perf.*, be accustomed, be wont. G. 14.
- cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, a consul, the chief Roman magistrate. 20.
- cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmp-tus, waste, consume, destroy. G. 11.
- contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, strive, hasten, contend. 35.
- continenter, *adv.*, continuously, continually. G. 1.
- contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (conteneō), keep together, restrain, hound. G. 1.
- contrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, opposite, against, on the other hand. 72.
- contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, insult, indignity. G. 14.
- conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, come together, assemble; *trans.*, meet. G. 6.
- conventus, -ūs, *m.*, assembly, court. G. 18.
- convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, turn around, change. G. 23.
- convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call together, summon. G. 16.
- cōpia, -ae, *f.*, a supply, plenty; *pl.*, supplies, troops, forces. 9.
- cōpiōsus, -a, -um, full of supplies, wealthy, plentiful. G. 23.
- corpus, -poris, *n.*, body. 19.
- cotidiānus, -a, -um, daily, customary. G. 1.
- cotidiē, *adv.*, daily, every day. G. 16.
- Crassus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Crassus, a wealthy politician and general. G. 21.
- crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus, lend, intrust; *with dat.*, trust, believe; suppose. 39.
- cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, burn, consume. G. 4.
- creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, create, elect, choose, make. 34.
- crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, grow, increase, become strong. G. 20.
- crūdēlis, -e, *adj.*, cruel. 27.

- culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, reprove, blame. 18.
- cultus, -ūs, *m.*, cultivation, care, civilization. G. 1.
- cum, *prep. with abl.*, with; cum cūrā, carefully. 21.
- cum, *conj. with indic.* when, whenever, at the time when; *with subjunc.*, when, while, although, since, because. 57.
- Cūmae, -ārum, *f.*, a Greek city on the west coast of Italy. 69.
- cupidē, *adv.*, eagerly. G. 15.
- cupiditās, -tātis, *f.*, eagerness, desire. G. 2.
- cupidus, -a, -um, eager, fond of, ambitious for. G. 2.
- cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -itus, desire, be eager for, wish well for. G. 18.
- cūr, *rel. and interrog. adv.*, why, 62.
- cūra, -ae, *f.*, care. 74.
- Cūriātius, -ī, *m.*, an Alban. 45.
- cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, take care, provide for, cause. G. 13.
- currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursūrus, run. 21.
- custōs, -tōdis, *m. and f.*, guard, watch, keeper. 77.
- damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, find guilty, condemn. G. 4.
- dē, *prep. with abl.*, from, about, concerning, of. 21.
- dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, owe, ought, must. G. 11.
- decem, *indecl. num.*, ten. 12.
- dēcernō, -ere, dēcrāvī, dēcrētus, decide, contend, resolve. 41.
- decimus, -a, -um, tenth. 26.
- dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (dēcapiō), deceive. G. 14.
- decuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, a decurion, commander of a squad of ten horsemen. G. 23.
- dēditicius, -a, -um, surrendered. G. 27.
- dēditio, -ōnis, *f.*, a surrender. G. 27.
- dēfendō, -ere, -ndī, -ēnsus, defend, ward off. 30.
- dēfetiscor, dēfetiscī, dēfessus, become exhausted, become weary. G. 25.
- dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (dēiaciō), cast down, drive off, destroy. G. 8.
- deinde, *adv.*, then, next, immediately. 30.
- dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, destroy. 13.
- dēliberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, deliberate, consider. G. 7.
- dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus (dēlegō), choose, select. G. 3.
- dēminuō, -ere, -minuī, -minūtus, lessen, impair. G. 18.
- dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, point out, show, make known, state. G. 11.
- dēmum, *adv.*, at last, at length. G. 17.
- dēnique, *adv.*, at last, finally. G. 22.
- dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, lay down, lay aside. G. 14.
- dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus, ravage, lay waste. G. 11.
- dēprecātor, -ōris, *m.*, mediator, intercessor. G. 9.
- dēprehendō, -ere, -ndī, -ēnsus, seize, catch, find out. 63.
- dēserō, -ere, dēseruī, dēsertus, abandon, desert. 22.

- dēsignō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, indicate, mean. G. 18.
- dēsistō**, -ere, dēstitī, dēstitūrus, cease, desist. G. 8.
- dēspērō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, cease to hope, despair. 46.
- dēspiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, look down upon, despise. G. 13.
- dēstituō**, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, abandon, desert. G. 16.
- dēstringō**, -ere, -strinxī, -strictus, strip off, draw (*a sword*). G. 25.
- dēterreō**, -ēre, -terruī, -territus, frighten off, prevent. G. 17.
- dētrīmentum**, -ī, *n.*, loss. 18.
- deus**, -ī, *m.*, a god. 70.
- dexter**, *dextera* or *dextra*, **dexterum** or **dextrum**, right (*not left*); **dextra** (*manus*), the right hand. G. 20.
- Diāna**, -ae, *an Italian goddess*. 57.
- dīcō**, -ere, dīxī, dictus, say, speak. 57.
- dictātor**, -ōris, *m.*, a dictator, a chief magistrate with unlimited power, who with his lieutenant, "the master of the horse," was appointed for a limited time to supersede the ordinary magistrates in great emergencies. 68.
- dictiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, a speaking, pleading. G. 4.
- diēs**, diēī, *m. and f.*, day, time. 34.
- differō**, -ferre, distulī, dilātus (**dis-ferō**), bear apart, defer, differ. G. 1.
- difficilis**, -e, not easy, difficult, hard. G. 6.
- dīmittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus (**dis-**mittō), send away, let go, dismiss. G. 18.
- diripiō**, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, (**dis-rapiō**), plunder, pillage. 39.
- discēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, go apart, retire, depart. G. 14.
- discō**, -ere, didici, learn. G. 13.
- disiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (**dis-iaciō**), hurl apart, scatter, rout. G. 25.
- dispōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, place here and there, distribute, station. G. 8.
- diū**, *adv.*, for a long time. 10.
- diūtius**, *comp. of diū*, for a longer time, longer, too long. G. 16.
- diūturnus**, -a, -um, long (*in time*), long continued. G. 14.
- dives**, *Gen.*, divitis, rich; *superl.*, dītissimus, richest. G. 2.
- Dīviciācus**, -ī, *m.*, *an Haeduan chief, friendly to the Romans*. G. 3.
- Dīvicō**, -ōnis, *m.*, *an Helvetian leader*. G. 13.
- dīvidō**, -ere, divisi, divīsus, divide, separate. G. 1.
- dō**, dare, dedī, datus, give. 7.
- doleō**, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, feel pain, suffer, grieve. G. 14.
- dolor**, -ōris, *m.*, pain, grief, distress. G. 2.
- dolū**, -ī, *m.*, deceit, tricks, stratagem. G. 13.
- domicilium**, -ī, *n.*, dwelling, abode. G. 30.
- dominus**, -ī, *m.*, master. 7.
- domus**, -ūs, *f.*, house, home. 32.
- dōnum**, -ī, *n.*, gift. 10.
- dubitātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, doubt, hesitation. G. 14.

- dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, doubt, hesitate. 70.
- dubius -a, -um, doubtful, uncertain. G. 3.
- ducentī, -ae, -a, two hundred. 36.
- dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead, conduct, take, think. 21.
- dum, conj., while, until, so long as, G. 7.
- Dumnorix, -rīgis, *m., an Haeduan, brother of Diviciacus, but unfriendly to the Romans.* G. 3.
- duo, duae, duo, two. 38.
- duodecim, twelve. 12.
- duodēvigintī, indecl., eighteen. G. 23.
- dux, ducis, *m., leader, guide.* 19.
- ē, prep. with abl. See ex.
- ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductus, lead out, bring out, take out. 39.
- effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make effeminate, weaken, enfeeble. G. 1.
- efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus (ex-ferō), carry out, publish, elate. G. 5.
- egeō, -ēre, eguī, want, need, lack, with abl. 76.
- ego, meī, *pers. pron., I.* 61.
- ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus (ex-gradior), go out. G. 27.
- ēgregius, -a, -um, excellent. 18.
- ēmittō, -ere, ēmisi, ēmissus, send forth, let go, hurl. 30.
- emō, -ere, ēmī, ēemptus, buy, purchase. G. 16.
- enim, conj., for. G. 14.
- ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make known, report. G. 4.
- eō, *adv., thither, to that place.* 8.
- eō, ire, īī (ivī), itūrus, go. 33. 41.
- eōdem, *adv., to the same place, to the same end.* G. 4.
- eques, -itis, *m., horseman, cavalryman, knight.* 24.
- equester, -tris, -tre, of the cavalry. G. 18.
- equitātus, -ūs, *m., cavalry.* 52.
- equus, -ī *m., horse.* 5.
- ēripiō, -ere, ēripiū, ēreptus (ex-rapiō), snatch away, take from, rescue. G. 4.
- et, conj., and: both . . . and. 1.
- etiam, conj., also, even. 21.
- Etrūsci, -ōrum, *m., the people inhabiting ancient Italy from the Tiber northward.* 76.
- ēvādō, -ere, ēvāsi, -sūrus, go forth, escape, climb, mount. 78.
- ēvellō, -ere, ēvelli and ēvulsī, ēvulsus, pull out. G. 25.
- ex (ē), prep. with abl., out of, from. 11.
- excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, withdraw, depart. 22.
- excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call forth, awaken, excite. 78.
- exemplum, -ī, *n., example, practice, precedent.* G. 8.
- exeō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus, go out, depart. G. 2.
- exercitus, -ūs, *m., army.* 32.
- existimātiō, -ōnis, *f., opinion, estimate, reputation.* G. 20.
- existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, judge, think, believe. G. 6.
- expeditus, -a, -um, unencumbered, easy, light-armed (*troops*). G. 6.
- expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, drive out, expel. 23.
- explōrātor, -ōris, *m., scout.* G. 12.

- expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, take by storm, capture. G. 11.
- exsequor, exsequi, exsecutus**, follow out, follow up; **iūs exsequi**, enforce the law. G. 4.
- expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, look out for, wait, wait to see. G. 11.
- exsul, -ulis, m. and f.**, an exile. 78.
- extrā, adv. and prep. with acc.**, outside of, beyond. G. 10.
- extrēmus, -a, -um**, farthest, last, at the end. G. 1.
- exūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustus, trans.**, burn up. G. 5.
- Fabius, -ī, m.** *The Fabii were a famous patrician family in ancient Rome.* 77.
- fābula, -ae, f.**, story, fable. 2.
- facile, adv.**, easily. 7.
- facilis, -e**, easy. G. 21.
- faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus**, make, do. 31.
- facultās, -tātis, f.**, power, opportunity; *pl.*, means, resources. G. 7.
- fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus**, deceive, elude, disappoint, escape the notice of. 78.
- fāma, -ae, f.**, fame, report, tradition, reputation. 17.
- famēs, -is, f.**, hunger, starvation. G. 28.
- familia, -ae, f.**, body of slaves or vassals, household, family. G. 4.
- familiāris, -e, adj.**, of the household, private, intimate; **rēs familiāris**, private property. G. 18.
- faveō, -ēre, fāvi, fautūrus**, be favorable to, favor. G. 18.
- fēmina, -ae, f.**, woman, lady. 9.
- fera, -ae, f.**, wild beast. 8.
- ferāx, Gen., ferācis, adj.**, fertile, productive. 27.
- ferē, adv.**, almost, nearly; generally. G. 1.
- ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus**, bear, carry, endure, report. 53.
- ferrum, -ī, n.**, iron; *anything made of iron*: ax, sword, dart. 66.
- fidēs, -eī, f.**, faith, belief, faithfulness, pledge, protection. 49.
- filia, -ae, f.**, daughter. 1.
- filius, -ī, m.**, son. 7.
- finis, -is, m.**, border, end; *pl.*, borders, territory. 23.
- finitimus, -a, -um**, adjoining, neighboring; *pl. as noun*, neighbors. 31.
- fiō, fieri, factus**, be made, be done, become, happen. 50.
- firmus, -a, -um**, strong. G. 3.
- flāgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, demand. G. 16.
- fleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus**, weep, weep for. G. 20.
- flōrēns, Gen., flōrentis, adj.**, flourishing, prosperous, influential. G. 30.
- flūmen, -inis, n.**, river. 19.
- fluō, -ere, flūxī**, flow. G. 6.
- fluvius, -ī, m.**, stream, river. 11.
- foedus, -eris, n.**, treaty, agreement. 47.
- fōns, fontis, m.**, spring, fountain. 70.
- forte, adv.**, by chance, accidentally. 73.
- fortis, -e**, strong, brave. 25.
- fortiter, adv.**, bravely. 16.
- fortitūdō, -dinis, f.**, bravery. G. 2.
- fortūna, -ae, f.**, fortune, lot, fate. 11.

- forum**, -ī, *n.*, market place, forum; *the center of public life in an ancient city, generally surrounded by shops, porticoes, and temples.* 70.
- fossa**, -ae, *f.*, ditch, trench. 57.
- frāter**, -tris, *m.*, brother. 19.
- frāternus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of a brother, brotherly. G. 20.
- frīgus**, -oris, *n.*, cold, cold weather; *pl.*, frosts. G. 16.
- frūctuosus**, -a, -um, fertile, fruitful. G. 30.
- frumentārius**, -a, -um, pertaining to grain, productive of grain. G. 10.
- frumentum**, -ī, *n.*, grain; *pl.*, standing grain. 12.
- frūstrā**, *adv.*, to no purpose, in vain. 76.
- frūx**, **frūgis**, *f.*, fruit, produce; *pl.*, crops. G. 28.
- fuga**, -ae, *f.*, flight, running away. 77.
- fugiō**, -ere, **fūgī**, **fugitūrus**, flee. 31.
- fugitīvus**, -a, -um, runaway; *pl. as noun*, runaways. G. 23.
- fugō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, put to flight. 8.
- fulmen**, -inis, *n.*, thunderbolt, flash of lightning. 50.
- fūrtim**, *adv.*, stealthily, by stealth 78.
- Gabīnius**, -ī, *m.*, one of the consul. of 58 B.C. G. 6.
- Gallia**, -ae, *f.*, Gaul, the ancient name for France. 24.
- Gallicus**, -a, -um, of the Gauls, Gallic. G. 22.
- Gallus**, -ī, *m.*, a Gaul, a native of Gaul; *adj.*, Gallic. 24.
- gaudium**, -ī, *n.*, joy. 11.
- geminus**, -a, -um, twin- (brother or sister). 70.
- Genāva**, -ae, *f.*, a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva. G. 6.
- gēns**, **gentis**, *f.*, race, tribe. 23.
- Germānia**, -ae, *f.*, Germany. 28.
- Germānus**, -a, -um, German, a German. 28.
- gerō**, -ere, **gessī**, **gestus**, bear, carry on, do, wage; **bellum gerere**, wage war, carry on war. 24.
- gladius**, -ī, *m.*, sword. 7.
- glōria**, -ae, *f.*, glory, renown. 16.
- glōrior**, -ārī, -ātus, glory in, boast. G. 14.
- Graecus**, -a, -um, Greek, Grecian. G. 29.
- Graioceli**, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe in the Alps. G. 10.
- grātia**, -ae, *f.*, gratitude, goodwill, influence. G. 9.
- grātulor**, -ārī, -ātus, *with dat.*, congratulate. G. 30.
- grātus**, -a, -um, pleasing, agreeable, grateful. 72.
- gravis**, -e, heavy, severe. 27.
- graviter**, *adv.*, heavily, severely, seriously. 46.
- habeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, have, hold. 6.
- habitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, dwell, reside, inhabit. 33.
- Haeduus**, -a, -um, of the Haeduan; *noun*, an Haeduan. G. 3.
- hasta**, -ae, *f.*, spear. 9.
- Helvētīi**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Helve-

- tians, *a Celtic race inhabiting Switzerland in ancient times.*
- Helvētius**, -a, -um, Helvetian. G. 2.
- hibernus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of winter; *neut. pl.*, **hiberna**, -ōrum, winter quarters. G. 10.
- hic**, **haec**, **hoc**, this; he, she, it. 49.
- hiemō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, pass the winter, winter. G. 10.
- hiems**, **hiemis**, *f.*, winter. 24.
- Hispānia**, -ae, *f.*, Spain. G. 1.
- hodiē**, *adv.*, to-day, at the present time. 45.
- homō**, -inis, *m. and f.*, man, human being (*man or woman*). 30.
- honor**, -ōris, *m.*, respect, honor, office. G. 18.
- hōra**, -ae, *f.*, hour. G. 26.
- Horātius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman. 65.
- hortor**, -ārī, -ātus, encourage, urge. 74.
- hortus**, -ī, *m.*, garden. 4.
- hostis**, -is, *m.*, enemy. 23.
- hūmānitās**, -ātis, *f.*, humanity, refinement. G. 1.
- iactō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, toss, toss about, discuss. G. 18.
- iam**, *adv.*, already; *with a negative*, no longer. 10.
- Iāniculum**, -ī, *n.*, Janiculum, *a high hill on the right bank of the Tiber*. 51.
- ibi**, *adv.*, there, in that place. 13.
- ictus**, -ūs, *m.*, a stroke. G. 25.
- īdem**, **eadem**, **idem**, the same; also, likewise. 51.
- idōneus**, -a, -um, fit, suitable. 72.
- Īdūs**, -uum, *f.*, the Ides, *13th or 15th of the month*. G. 7.
- ignāvus**, -a, -um, lazy, cowardly. 18.
- ignis**, -is, *m.*, fire. 54.
- ignōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, fail to notice, not to know. G. 27.
- ille**, -a, -ud, that; he, she, it. 52.
- illic**, *adv.*, there, in that place. G. 18.
- immortālis**, -e, immortal. G. 12.
- impedimentum**, -ī, *n.*, hindrance; *pl.*, (heavy) baggage. G. 24.
- impediō**, -ire, -ivi *and* -iī, -itus, entangle, hinder, impede. G. 12.
- impendeō**, -ēre, overhang. G. 6.
- imperātor**, -ōris, *m.*, general. 26.
- imperium**, -ī, *n.*, command, authority, power, empire. 43.
- imperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, command, order, levy (*soldiers*). 38.
- impetrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, obtain a request, secure. G. 9.
- impetus**, -ūs, *m.*, attack, assault, fury, violence. 39.
- importō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus (*importō*), import. G. 1.
- improbus**, -a, -um, bad, wicked, reckless. G. 17.
- imprōvisō**, *adv.*, unexpectedly. G. 13.
- impūne**, *adv.*, with impunity. G. 14.
- impūnitās**, -ātis, *f.*, freedom from punishment, impunity. G. 14.
- in**, *prep. with abl.*, in, on, among, within; *with acc.*, into, on, to, against. 11.
- incendō**, -ere, -ndī, -ēnsus, burn, set fire to, inflame, excite. 39.
- incitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, set in motion, impel, rouse. G. 4.
- incola**, -ae, *m.*, inhabitant. 9.

- incolō**, -ere, -coluī, inhabit, live, dwell. 76.
- incommodum**, -ī, *n.*, disadvantage, defeat, disaster, misfortune. G. 13.
- incrēdibilis**, -e, incredible, marvelous. G. 12.
- inde**, *adv.*, thence, from that place, from that time. 67.
- indiciū**, -ī, *n.*, information, evidence, an informer. G. 4.
- indicō**, -ere, -dixī, -dictus, proclaim, declare, appoint. 43.
- indūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead on, induce; draw on, cover. G. 2.
- industria**, -ae, *f.*, industry, activity. 17.
- inferior**, -ius, lower, lower part of, weaker. G. 1.
- inferō**, -ferre, intulī, -lātus, bring, bring in, bring against. 65.
- inflectō**, -ere, -flexī, -inflexus, bend, bend down. G. 25.
- inflūō**, -ere, -flūxī, -flūxūrus, flow into. G. 8.
- ingenium**, -ī, *n.*, disposition, character, abilities. 17.
- ingredior**, -gredi, -gressus (*ingradiator*), advance, go in, enter. 65.
- inimicus**, -a, -um, hostile, unfriendly: *noun*, a personal enemy. 18.
- initium**, -ī, *n.*, beginning, origin. G. 1.
- iniūria**, -ae, *f.*, injury, wrong, insult. 31.
- iniussū**, *m.*, only in *abl.*, without orders, without command. G. 19.
- inopia**, -ae, *f.*, want, lack. G. 27.
- inopināns**, *Gen.*, **inopinantis**, *adj.*, not suspecting, off one's guard, unaware. G. 12.
- inquit**, he (she, it) says. 41.
- insciēns**, *Gen.*, -entis, *adj.*, not knowing, unaware. G. 19.
- insequor**, -sequī, -secūtus, follow after, pursue. G. 15.
- insidiae**, -ārum, *f.*, snare, trap, ambush. 77.
- insigne**, -is, *n.*, sign, badge, decoration. G. 22.
- insignis**, -e, *adj.*, marked, notable, signal. G. 12.
- insolenter**, *adv.*, insultingly. G. 14.
- instituō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, establish, appoint, teach, begin. 33.
- institutum**, -ī, *n.*, habit, practice, custom, institution. G. 1.
- instō**, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrus, press on, be at hand, threaten. G. 16.
- instruō**, -ere, -ūxī, -ūctus, arrange, draw up. 72.
- intellegō**, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, learn, know, understand. 72.
- inter**, *prep. with acc.*, between, among. 16.
- intercēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, go between, intervene, exist between. G. 7.
- interclūdō**, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus (*inter-claudō*), shut off, hinder. G. 23.
- interdiū**, *adv.*, by day. G. 8.
- interdum**, *adv.*, for a time, sometimes. G. 14.
- interea**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime. G. 8.
- interficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (*inter-faciō*), kill, put to death. 49.



- interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime. 61.
- intermittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, interrupt, stop, omit, let pass. G. 26.
- interneciō**, -ōnis, *f.*, extermination, annihilation. G. 13.
- interpres**, -etis, *m.*, interpreter. G. 19.
- intersum**, -esse, -fuī, be between, take part in. G. 15.
- intervallum**, -ī, *n.*, interval, distance, space. G. 22.
- invitus**, -a, -um, unwilling. G. 8.
- ipse**, -a, -um, himself, he himself, in person, the very. 60.
- ire**. See **eō**, go.
- is**, ea, id, this, that, he, she, it. 35.
- ita**, *adv.*, so, in such a way, thus. G. 11.
- Italia**, -ae, *f.*, Italy. 31.
- itaque**, *adv.*, and so, accordingly. G. 9.
- item**, *adv.*, likewise, also. 35.
- iter**, **itineris**, *n.*, march, journey, way, path, road. 77.
- iterum**, *adv.*, again, a second time. 52.
- iubeō**, -ēre, **iussī**, **iussus**, bid, order, command, with *inf.* and *acc.* 53.
- iūdex**, -icis, *m.*, judge, juror. 73.
- iūdicium**, -ī, *n.*, judgment, trial, court of trial. G. 4.
- iūdicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, judge, decide. 68.
- iugum**, -ī, *n.*, yoke, ridge, crest. G. 7.
- Iūlius**, -ī, *m.*, Caesar's nomen. 24.
- iumentum**, -ī, *n.*, a beast of burden. 12.
- iungō**, -ere, **iūnxī**, **iunctus**, join. G. 8.
- Iūnius**, -ī, *m.*, Brutus' nomen. 59.
- Iūnō**, -ōnis, *f.*, the goddess Juno. 78.
- Iuppiter**, **Iovis**, *m.*, Jupiter, chief god of the old Roman religion. 50.
- Iūra**, -ae, *m.*, Jura, a chain of mountains in eastern Gaul. G. 2.
- iūs**, **iūris**, *n.*, right, justice, law, court of justice. 62.
- iūs iurandum**, **iūris iurandī**, *n.*, oath. G. 3.
- iūstitia**, -ae, *f.*, justice, uprightness. G. 19.
- iuvenis**, -e, young; *noun*, a youth, young man. 42.
- iuvō**, -āre, **iūvī**, **iūtus**, help, aid. G. 26.
- Kalendae**, -ārum, *f.*, the Calends, first day of the Roman month. G. 6.
- L.**, abbreviation for **Lūcius**, a Roman praenomen. 59.
- Labiēnus**, -ī, *m.*, an officer in Caesar's army. 24.
- labōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, labor, toil, suffer. 12.
- laccessō**, -ere, -ivī, -itus, harass, attack, provoke. G. 15.
- lacrima**, -ae, *f.*, a tear. G. 20.
- lacus**, -ūs, *m.*, lake. 68.
- laetus**, -a, -um, glad, happy. 5.
- lapis**, -idis, *m.*, stone. 19.
- largior**, -irī, -itus, give freely, bribe. G. 18.
- largiter**, *adv.*, abundantly. G. 18.

- largitīō, -ōnis, *f.*, generosity, bribing. G. 9.
- lātē, *adv.* widely. G. 2.
- Latinus, -a, -um, Latin; a Latin. 50.
- lātītūdō, -inis, *f.* width. G. 2.
- Latobrigī, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe associated with the Helvetians. G. 5.
- latus, -eris, *n.*, side, flank. G. 25.
- lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad. 14.
- laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, praise. 6.
- lēgātīō, -ōnis, *f.*, embassy. G. 3.
- lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, lieutenant, ambassador. 5.
- legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion. 20.
- Lemannus, -ī, *m.*, ancient name for Lake Geneva. G. 2.
- lēnitās, -ātis, *f.*, gentleness, smoothness. G. 12.
- leō, -ōnis, *m.*, lion. 19.
- leviter, *adv.*, lightly, slightly, easily. 47.
- lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law. 33.
- liber, -bri, *m.*, book. 14.
- liber, -era, -erum, free. 14.
- liberālītās, -ātis, *f.*, generosity. G. 18.
- liberē, *adv.*, freely, openly, without hindrance. 51.
- liberī, -ōrum, *m.*, children. 78.
- liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, free, set free. 17.
- libertās, -ātis, *f.*, liberty, freedom.
- liceor, -ērī, -itus, bid (at an auction). G. 18.
- licet, -ēre, licuit, *impersonal verb*, it is allowed, it is permitted. G. 7.
- Lingonēs, -um, *Acc.*, Lingonas, a Gallic nation northwest of the Sequanni. G. 26.
- lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language. G. 1.
- linter, -tris, *Gen. pl.*, linterium, skiff, boat. G. 12.
- Liscus, -ī, *m.*, chief magistrate of the Heduvians 58 B.C. G. 16.
- littera, -ae, *f.*, a letter (of the alphabet); *pl.*, a letter, epistle. 22.
- locus, -ī, *m.*, place, spot; *neut. pl.*, loca, -ōrum, places, locality, region. 58.
- longē, *adv.*, far, far away, distant. 47.
- longitūdō, -inis, *f.*, length. G. 2.
- longus, -a, -um, long. 2.
- loquor, loquī, locūtus, speak, talk. *say.* G. 20.
- lūdus, -ī, *m.*, game, sport, school: the Ludi Romani were public exhibitions of various kinds given annually in September. 55.
- lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light. 72.
- M.**, abbreviation for Mārcus, a praenomen. 78.
- magis, *comp. adv.*, more, rather. G. 13.
- magister, -tri, *m.*, master, teacher. 14.
- magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, magistracy, magistrate. 74.
- magnitūdō, -inis, *f.*, greatness, magnitude. 56.
- magnopere, *adv.*, greatly. 49.
- magnus, -a, -um, large, great. 2.
- maior, maius, *comp. of magnus*, larger, greater: *pl.*, elders, ancestors. 32.
- male, *adv.*, badly, ill. 59.

- maleficium**, -ī, *n.*, harm, mischief. G. 7.
- mālō**, **mālle**, **māluī**, *prefer.* 72.
- malus**, -a, -um, bad, evil, wicked. 10.
- mandō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, intrust, commit, order. G. 12.
- maneō**, -ēre, **mānsī**, **mānsūrus**, remain, await. 13.
- Mānlius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman. 78.
- manus**, -ūs, *f.*, hand; band (*of soldiers*), force. 39.
- matara**, -ae, *f.*, spear, pike (*used by the Gauls*). G. 26.
- māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother. 35.
- mātrimōnium**, -ī, *n.*, marriage, matrimony. 57.
- Matrona**, -ae, *m.*, the Marne, a river of central Gaul. G. 1.
- mātūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hasten, make haste. G. 7.
- mātūrus**, -a, -um, ripe, early. G. 16.
- maximē**, *adv.*, especially, very. G. 10.
- maximus**, -a, -um, largest, greatest, very great. 52.
- medium**, -ī, *n.*, the middle, center, intervening space. 45.
- medius**, -a, -um, middle, in the middle, the middle of. 45.
- melior**, **melius**, *comp. adj.*, better. 29.
- melius**, *comp. adv.*, better. 71.
- membrum**, -ī, *n.*, a part of the body, limb. 74.
- meminī**, **meminisse**, *perf. form with pres. meaning*, remember. 72.
- memoria**, -ae, *f.*, memory. G. 7.
- Menēnius**, -ī, *m.*, name of a certain Agrippa. 74.
- mēnsis**, -is, *m.*, month. 24.
- mercātor**, -ōris, *m.*, a trader. G. 1.
- mereor**, -ērī, -itus, win, earn, deserve, serve (*in the army*). G. 11.
- meritum**, -ī, *n.*, desert, service. G. 14.
- Messāla**, -ae, *m.*, Marcus Valerius Messala, consul 61 B.C. G. 2.
- mētior**, -īrī, **mēnsus**, measure, deal, deal out, distribute. G. 16.
- Mettius**, -ī, *m.*, an Alban general. 49.
- metus**, -ūs, *m.*, fear, dread, anxiety. 61.
- meus**, -a, -um, my. 43.
- migrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, move away, migrate. 13.
- mihi**, *dat. of ego*, I.
- mīles**, -itis, *m.*, soldier. 20.
- mīlia**, *pl. of mille*.
- militāris**, -e, *adj.*, military. 25.
- mīlle**, one thousand. 56.
- minimē**, *superl. adv.*, least, by no means. G. 1.
- minimus**, -a, -um, *superl. of parvus*, least, very small. G. 8.
- minor**, **minus**, *comp. of parvus*, smaller. 28.
- minuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, diminish, weaken, reduce. G. 20.
- minus**, *adv.*, *comp. of parum*, less. 29.
- mīror**, -ārī, -ātus, wonder, marvel, admire. 77.
- miser**, -era, -erum, poor, wretched. 13.
- mittō**, -ere, **mīsī**, **missus**, send, throw. 21.
- modo**, *adv.*, only; just now, recently. 43.

- moenia**, -ium, *n.*, walls (*of a city or walled town*). 30.
- molō**, -ere, -uī, -itus, grind. G. 5.
- moneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, warn, advise. 6.
- mōns**, montis, *m.*, a mountain. 23.
- mora**, -ae, *f.*, delay. 73.
- morior**, morī, mortuus and moritūrus, die. 47.
- moror**, -ārī, -ātus, linger, delay, detain. G. 26.
- mors**, mortis, *f.*, death. 33.
- mōs**, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom; *pl.*, customs, character. 51.
- moveō**, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move, influence, break up (*camp*). G. 15.
- mox**, *adv.*, presently, soon. 9.
- Mūcius**, -ī, *m.*, a young Roman who attempted to slay king Por-sena. 66.
- mulier**, -eris, *f.*, woman. 19.
- multitūdō**, -inis, *f.*, multitude, crowd, throng. 25.
- multō**, *adv.*, much. G. 6.
- multus**, -a, -um, much, many. 3.
- mūniō**, -īre, -ivī, -itus, fortify. 30.
- mūnitiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification. G. 8.
- mūrus**, -ī, *m.*, wall. 19.
- nam**, *conj.*, for. 52.
- Nammeius**, -ī, *m.*, an Helvetian. G. 7.
- nārrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, tell, relate. 6.
- nātūra**, -ae, *f.*, nature, character. 78.
- nauta**, -ae, *m.*, sailor. 1.
- nāvis**, -is, *f.*, ship, boat. 23.
- ne**, *enclitic used to mark the sentence as interrogative*. 62.
- nē**, *in independent sentences, not; introducing subordinate clause that not, lest*. 38.
- necessārius**, -a, -um, necessary, critical, pressing: *noun*, relative, kinsman, close friend. G. 11.
- necne**, *conj.*, or not; *used in indirect questions*. 67.
- negō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, say no, say not, deny. G. 8.
- nēmō**, *Lat.*, nēminī, *Acc.*, nēminem, *m. and f.*, no man, no one, nobody. 61.
- neque or nec**, *conj.*, and not, nor; *correl.*, neither . . . nor. 64.
- nervus**, -ī, sinew; *pl.*, force, power. G. 20.
- nēve**, *continuing ut or nē*, or not, and not, nor. G. 26.
- nex**, necis, *f.*, death, violent death. G. 16.
- nihil or nīl**, *n., nom. and acc. sing. only*, nothing. 74.
- nihilum**, -ī *n.*, nothing. G. 5.
- nimum**, *adv.*, too much, too. 68.
- nisi**, *conj.*, if not, unless, except. 77.
- nītor**, nīti, nisus and nīxus, strangle, strive, exert one's self, rely upon. G. 13.
- nōbilis**, -e, well known, noble, eminent. G. 2.
- nōbilitās**, -ātis, *f.*, nobility, the nobles. G. 2.
- nōbīs**, *dat. and abl. of nōs*.
- nōlō**, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling, wish not. 67.
- nōmen**, -inis, *n.*, name. 19.
- nōminātim**, *adv.*, by name, individually, expressly. G. 29.
- nōn**, *adv.*, not. 4.

- nōnāgintā**, *indecl. num.* ninety. G. 29.
- nōndum**, *adv.*, not yet. G. 6.
- nōnne**, *used to mark a question when the answer "yes" is expected.* 62.
- Nōreia**, -ae, *f.*, a town of the Norici. G. 5.
- Nōricus**, -a, -um, of the Norici, Noric. G. 5.
- nōs**, we, us. 42.
- noster**, -tra, -trum, our. 13.
- novem**, *indecl. num.*, nine.
- novus**, -a, -um, new, recent, last. 73.
- nox**, *noctis f.*, night. 35. **noctū**, *irreg. abl.*, by night. G. 8.
- nūbō**, -ere, **nūpsī**, **nūpta**, veil one's self, marry (*of the bride*). G. 18.
- nūdus**, -a, -um, naked, unprotected. G. 25.
- nūllus**, -a, -um, not any, none, no. 57.
- num**, *used in direct questions when the answer "no" is expected; in indirect questions, whether.* 62.
- Numa**, -ae, *m.*, second king of Rome. 33.
- numerus**, -ī, *m.*, number. 18.
- numquam**, *adv.*, never. G. 8.
- nunc**, *adv.*, now. 52.
- nūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, announce, report. 39.
- nūntius**, -ī, *m.*, messenger, message. 7.
- nūper**, *adv.*, lately, recently. G. 6.
- ob**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for. 49.
- obaerātus**, -ī, *m.*, debtor. G. 4.
- obiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (**ob-**
- iaciō**), throw in the way of, present, expose. G. 26.
- oblīviscor**, -ī, **oblītus**, forget. 72.
- obsecrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, implore, entreat. G. 20.
- obses**, -idis, *m. and f.*, hostage. 20.
- obstringō**, -ere, -īnxī, -ictus, bind. G. 9.
- obtineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (**ob-**  
**teneō**), hold, occupy, secure. G. 1.
- occāsus**, -ūs, *m.*, setting; **occāsus sōlis**, sunset, the west. G. 1.
- occidō**, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus (**ob-**  
**caedō**), kill. 25.
- occultō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, conceal, hide. G. 27.
- occupō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, seize, occupy. 20.
- occurrō**, -ere, -curri, -cursūrus (**ob-**  
**currō**), run to meet, oppose, resist, meet. 68.
- Oceanus**, -ī, *m.*, the ocean. G. 1.
- Ocelum**, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Graculi on the western border of the province of Cisalpine Gaul. G. 10.
- octō**, *indecl. num.*, eight. 24.
- octōgintā**, *indecl. num.*, eighty. 56.
- oculus**, -ī, *m.*, eye. G. 12.
- ōdī**, **ōdisse**, **ōsūrus**, *perf. form with pres. meaning*, hate. G. 18.
- odium**, -ī, *n.*, hatred. 71.
- offendō**, -ere, -ndī, -ēnsus, strike against, hurt. G. 19.
- offēnsiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, offense, hurting. G. 19.
- olim**, *adv.*, once, once upon a time. 19.
- omnīnō**, *adv.*, altogether, at all, in all. 60.

**omnis**, -e, all, every. 25.  
**oportet**, -ēre, -uit, *impersonal verb*, it is necessary, ought. 77.  
**oppidum**, -ī, *n.*, town, fortified town. 12.  
**opportūnus**, -a, -um, favorable, advantageous. G. 30.  
**oppugnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, attack, lay siege to. G. 5.  
**ops**, **opis**, *f.*, aid, help, protection: *pl.*, resources, power, wealth, means. 74.  
**optimus**, -a, -um, *superl. of bonus*, best, very good. 28.  
**opus**, -eris, *n.*, work, labor, a work. 55.  
**ōrātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, words, argument. G. 3.  
**ōrātor**, -ōris, *m.*, speaker, orator, ambassador. 74.  
**Orgetorix**, -īgis, *m.*, an *Helvetian nobleman*. G. 2.  
**orior**, -īrī, **ortus**, arise. *Apart from present infinitive this word is of the third conjugation.* 71.  
**ōrnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, adorn. 10.  
**ōrō** -āre -āvī, -ātus, speak, beg, entreat. G. 20.  
**ostendō** -ere, -ndī, -ntus, show, point out, declare. G. 8.  
  
**P.**, abbreviation for **Pūblius**, a *praenomen*. G. 21.  
**pābulātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, foraging, procuring fodder. G. 15.  
**pābulum**, -ī, *n.*, fodder, green fodder. G. 16.  
**pācō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, subdue, pacify. 24.  
**Padus**, -ī, *m.*, the river Po. 76.  
**paene**, *adv.*, almost, nearly. 66.  
**paenitet**, -ēre, -uit, *impersonal*

*verb*, it repents (one): **mē paenitet**, I repent. 73.  
**pāgus**, -ī, *m.*, district, canton. G. 12.  
**Palātium**, -ī, *n.*, the Palatine, *one of the hills of Rome*. 55.  
**palūs**, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, swamp. 26.  
**pār**, *Gen.*, **paris**, *ulj.*, equal. 51.  
**parātus**, -a, -um, ready, prepared. 63.  
**pāreō**, -ēre, -uī, obey, *with dat.* 41.  
**pars**, **partis**, *f.*, part. 23.  
**parvus**, -a, -um, little, small. 2.  
**passus**, -ūs, *m.*, pace (*five Roman feet*); **mille passūs**, a mile. 58.  
**pāstor**, -ōris, *m.*, shepherd. 19.  
**pateō**, -ēre, -uī, be open, extend; **patens**, -ntis, *adj.*, open. G. 2.  
**pater**, -tris, *m.*, father. 60.  
**patior**, **patī**, **passus**, suffer, bear, allow, permit. 61.  
**patria**, -ae, *f.*, native land, fatherland, country. 12.  
**pauci**, -ae, -a, few, a few. 41.  
**paulātim**, *adv.*, gradually, little by little. 76.  
**paulō**, *adv.*, a little, somewhat. 70.  
**pāx**, **pācis**, *f.*, peace. 20.  
**pecūnia**, -ae, *f.*, money. 3.  
**pecus**, -oris, *n.*, cattle, herd, flock. 19.  
**pedes**, -itis, *m.*, foot-soldier. 24.  
**pellō**, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsus**, strike, impel, drive out, defeat. 26.  
**per**, *prep. with acc.*, through, by, on account of. 59.  
**perdūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, bring, conduct, prolong. G. 8.  
**perfacilis**, -e, very easy. G. 2.  
**perferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bear through, endure, submit to. G. 17.

- perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus** (per-faciō), accomplish, finish, make, bring about. G. 3.
- perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -fractus** (per-frangō), break through. G. 25.
- perfuga, -ae, m.,** deserter, fugitive. G. 28.
- perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugus**, run away, flee. G. 27.
- periculōsus, -a, -um,** dangerous, perilous. 61.
- periculum, -ī, n.,** peril, danger. 26.
- peritus, -a, -um,** experienced, skillful. G. 21.
- permittō, -ere, -misi, -missus,** intrust, permit, allow. G. 30.
- permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus,** move, influence, arouse, alarm. G. 3.
- perniciēs, -ēī, f.,** ruin. G. 20.
- perpaucī, -ae, -a,** very few. G. 6.
- perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus,** break through. G. 8.
- persequor, -sequi, -secutus,** follow up, pursue, attack. G. 13.
- persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus,** persist. G. 13.
- persolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solutus,** pay, suffer (a penalty). G. 12.
- persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus,** persuade. 38.
- perterreō, -ēre, -terrui, -territus,** frighten, terrify, alarm. G. 18.
- pertineō, -ēre, -tinui (per-teneō),** extend, pertain to, tend. G. 1.
- pervenio, -ire, -veni, -venturus,** arrive at, reach, come to. G. 7.
- pēs, pedis, m.,** foot. 21.
- petō, -ere, -ivi and -ii, -itus,** seek, ask. 32.
- phalanx, -angis, f.,** a phalanx, array of troops. G. 24.
- pilum, -ī, n.,** javelin, the distinctive weapon of the Roman legion. G. 25.
- Pisō, -ōnis, m.,** Marcus Piso, consul in 61 B.C. G. 2.
- placeō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus,** please, suit, satisfy, with *dat.* 41.
- plēbs, plēbis, f.,** no *pl.*, the common people, commons, plebeians. 71.
- plērumque, adv.,** for the most part, mostly, generally. 73.
- plūrimum, superl. adv.,** very much; **plūrimum posse,** be most powerful. G. 3.
- plūrimus, -a, -um,** very much, very many. 28.
- plūs, plūris, neut. noun and adv.,** more; *pl., adj.*, more, many. 49.
- poena, -ae, f.,** penalty, punishment. G. 4.
- polliceor, -ērī, -itus,** promise, offer. G. 14.
- Pollūx, -ūcis, m.,** name of Castor's twin-brother. 70.
- pōnō, -ere, posui, -itus,** put down, set, place; **castra pōnere,** pitch a camp. 58.
- pōns, pontis, m.,** bridge. 51.
- populātiō, -ōnis, f.,** plundering, pillaging. G. 15.
- populor, -ārī, -ātus,** ravage, devastate. G. 11.
- populus, -ī, m.,** people. 24.
- Porsinna, -ae, m.,** a powerful king of Clusium. 65.
- porta, -ae, f.,** city-gate, gate. 77.
- portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** carry. 5.
- portōrium, -ī, n.,** toll, customs, duty. G. 18.

- poscō, -ere, poposci, demand, claim. G. 27.
- possessiō, -ōnis, *f.*, possession. G. 11.
- possum, posse, potui, be able, can. 48.
- post, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.*, afterwards, after, behind. 16.
- postea, *adv.*, afterwards. 22.
- postera, -um, *adj.*, *masc.* lacks *nom. sing.*, following, next. 63.
- postquam, *conj.*, after. 64.
- postridiē, *adv.*, on the following day. G. 23.
- Postumius, -i, *m.*, a Roman general. 68.
- potēns, *Gen.*, potentis, *adj.*, powerful. 65.
- potentia, -ae, *f.*, power, influence. G. 18.
- potestās, -ātis, *f.*, power. 20.
- potior, -iri, -itus, get possession of, with *abl.*; with *gen.*, get the mastery over. 48.
- praecēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus, go before: surpass, excel. G. 1.
- praecipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus (prae-capiō), anticipate, command, instruct. G. 22.
- praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, plunder, spoil. 43.
- praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (prae-faciō), place at the head, put in command. G. 10.
- praemittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, send ahead. G. 15.
- praemium, -i, *n.*, reward. 42.
- praeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, prefer. G. 25.
- praesēns, *Gen.*, praesentis, *adj.*, present. G. 18.
- praesentia, -ae, *f.*, presence, the present time. G. 15.
- praesertim, *adv.*, especially. 73.
- praesidium, -i, *n.*, guard, aid, garrison, post. 65.
- praestō, -āre, -stiti, -stitus and -stātus, excel, (with *dat.*); *trans.*, perform, exhibit. 70.
- praesum, -esse, -fui, be at the head, be in command of. 48.
- praeter, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*, beyond, past, besides, except. 68.
- praeteritus, -a, -um, past, bygone. G. 20.
- praetor, -ōris, *m.*, general; a praetor, a Roman magistrate next below consul in rank. G. 21.
- precēs, -um, *sing.* rare except *abl.*, prece, *f.*, prayers, entreaties. G. 16.
- precor, -ārī, -ātus, pray, entreat. 66.
- premō, -ere, pressi, pressus, press, oppress, burden, press upon, attack. 73.
- prēndō, -ere, -ndī, -nsus, seize, take, grasp. G. 20.
- pretium, -i, *n.*, price, value, reward. 17.
- pridiē, *adv.*, on the day before. G. 23.
- primum, *adv.*, first, at first. G. 25.
- primus, -a, -um, first. 31.
- princeps, *Gen.*, principis, *adj.*, first, chief, foremost; *noun*, chief, foremost man. G. 7.
- principātus, -ūs, *m.*, leadership, supremacy. G. 3.
- prior, prius, *comp. adj.*, former, previous, prior. 51.



**prīstinus**, -a, -um, old, former. G. 13.

**priusquam**, *conj.*, before, sooner than. 64.

**privātim**, *adv.*, privately, as private persons. G. 17.

**privātus**, -a, -um, personal, private, out of office; *noun*, a citizen in private life. 61.

**prō**, *prep. with abl.*, before, in behalf of, for, instead of, in proportion to. 43.

**probō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, approve, prove, show. G. 3.

**prōditor**, -ōris, *m.*, traitor, betrayer. 39.

**prōdō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, give up, betray, hand down, transmit. G. 13.

**proslum**, -ī, *n.*, battle. 13.

**profectiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, departure. G. 3.

**proficiscor**, -ī, -fectus, start, set out, go, march. 51.

**prohibeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus (**prōhabeō**), restrain, keep off, prevent. 70.

**prōiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (**prōiaciō**), throw forward, cast down, abandon. G. 27.

**prope** (*comp.*, **propius**; *superl.*, **proximō**), *adv.*, near; *also prep. with acc.*, near. 56.

**prōpellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, drive back, repel, rout. G. 15.

**properō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hurry, hasten. 8.

**propinquus**, -a, -um, near, related; *pl.*, relatives. G. 16.

**prōpōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, place before, state, make known. G. 17.

**propter**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, near by, on account of. G. 9.

**proptereā**, *adv.*, on this account. G. 1.

**prōspiciō**, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, look forward, provide for. G. 23.

**prōvincia**, -ae, *f.*, province. 13.

**proximē**, *superl. adv.*, lately, last, recently. G. 24.

**proximus**, -a, -um, nearest, next, last. G. 1.

**pūblicē**, *adv.*, publicly, as a state. G. 16.

**pūblicus**, -a, -um, of the people, of the state, public. G. 12.

**puella**, -ae, *f.*, girl. 1.

**puer**, -erī, *m.*, boy, child. 12.

**pugna**, -ae, *f.*, fight, battle. 18.

**pugnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, fight. 7.

**pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, fine. 13.

**pūniō**, -īre, -ivī *and* -iī, -itus, punish. 52.

**pūrgō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make clean, free from blame. G. 28.

**putō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, think. 45.

**Pyrēnaei** (**montēs**), *m.*, the Pyrenees. G. 1.

**quā**, *rel. adv.*, where, by which way. G. 6.

**quadrāgintā**, *indecl. num.*, forty. 56.

**quadringenti**, -ae, -a, four hundred. G. 5.

**quaerō**, -ere, **quaesivī**, -itus, seek, ask, inquire. 64.

**quālis**, -e, *rel. and interrog. adj.*, of what sort. G. 21.

**quam**, *adv. and conj.*, than, how;

- quam diū**, as long as. *With superl.*, as much as possible. 29, 66.
- quantus, -a, -um**, *rel. and interrog. adj.*, how great, how much, as great as, as. G. 17.
- quārē**, on account of which thing, wherefore. 31.
- quārtus, -a, -um**, fourth. 56.
- quattuor**, *indecl. num.*, four. 26.
- quattuordecim**, *indecl. num.*, fourteen. G. 29.
- que**, *enclit. conj.*, and. 4.
- queror, -i. questus**, complain, lament. 71.
- quī, quae. quod. rel. pron.**, who, which, that, whose, whom, etc. 42.
- quidam. quaedam. quiddam**, a certain one, a certain thing. 69.
- quidem, adv.**, certainly, indeed, at least; **nē . . . quidem**, not even; *emphatic word comes between nē and quidem*. 77.
- quīn, conj.**, but, that; **quīn etiam**, nay even. 70.
- quīndecim**, *indecl. num.*, fifteen. 56.
- quīngentī, -ae, -a**, five hundred. G. 15.
- quīnī, -ae, -a**, five each, five apiece. G. 15.
- quīnque. indecl. num.**, five. 56.
- quīntus, -a, -um**, fifth. G. 6.
- quis, quid. interrog. and indef. pron.**, who? what? any one, anything, some one, something. 62, 72.
- quisquam. quicquam. indef. pron.**, any one, anything. 68.
- quisque, quidque. indef. pron.**, each one, each thing, each. 68.
- quō, with subj.**, in order that. G. 8.
- quod, conj.**, because, that, the fact that; **quod sī**, but if. 71.
- quōminus or quō minus. conj.**, that not, in order that not, from. 71.
- quōmodo or quō modo**, in what manner, how, as. 67.
- quoque. adv.**, also, too. G. 1.
- quot, indecl. rel. and interrog. adj.**, as many, as many as, how many. G. 29.
- quotannis. adv.**, yearly, every year. 59.
- raeda (also rēda). -ae, f.**, wagon. G. 26.
- rapīna, -ae, f.**, plunder, plundering. G. 15.
- ratiō. -ōnis, f.**, reckoning, account, reason, plan. G. 28.
- ratis. -is, f.**, raft. G. 8.
- Rauraci. -ōrum, m.**, a tribe near the Rhine. G. 5.
- recēns, Gen., -entis, adj.**, new, fresh, late. G. 14.
- recipiō. -ere. -cēpī. -ceptus (re-capiō)**, take back, recover, receive; **sē recipere**, betake one's self, withdraw, retreat. 54.
- recūsō. -āre. -āvī. -ātus**, refuse, decline, reject. 50.
- reddō. -ere. -didī. -ditus**, give back, return, deliver. 61.
- redeō. -ire. -iī. -itūrus**, go back, turn back, return. 47.
- redimō. -ere. -ēmī. -ēemptus (red-emō)**, buy back, purchase, buy up. G. 18.
- redintegrō. -āre. -āvī. -ātus**, renew. G. 25.

- reditiō, -ōnis, f.**, a return, returning. G. 5.
- redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus**, lead back, bring back. G. 28.
- referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus**, carry back, report, refer. 63.
- Rēgillus, -ī, m.**, name of an ancient lake, the exact location of which is unknown. It was not far from Tusculum. 68.
- rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, rule, be king, reign. 50.
- rēgnum, -ī, n.**, kingdom, power, rule. 43.
- regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus**, rule, rule over, govern. 25.
- reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (re-iaciō)**, throw back, hurl back, drive back. G. 24.
- relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus**, leave, abandon. 22.
- reliquus, -a, -um**, remaining, the rest, future. G. 1.
- reminiscor, -sci, remember.** G. 13.
- removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus**, move back, remove, dismiss. G. 19.
- renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, bring back word, report. G. 21.
- repellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus**, drive back, repulse, repel. G. 8.
- repentīnus, -a, -um**, sudden, hasty. G. 13.
- reperiō, -ire, repperī, repertus**, find, find out, learn. G. 18.
- repetō, -ere, -ivī and -iī, -itus**, seek again, demand back. 50.
- reprehendō, -ere, -ndī, -ēnsus**, restrain, blame. G. 20.
- repugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus**, resist, oppose. G. 19.
- rēs, rei, f.**, thing, affair, circumstance, property. 35.
- rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus**, cut away, destroy. G. 7.
- resciscō, -ere, -scivī and -sciī, -scītus**, discover, learn. G. 28.
- resistō, -ere, -stitī, stand still**, stop, resist, with *dat.* 38.
- respondeō, -ēre, -ndī, -ōnsus**, answer, reply. 76.
- respōnsum, -ī, n.**, answer, reply. G. 14.
- rēspūblica, reīpūblicae, f.**, state, republic, commonwealth. 59.
- restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus**, set up again, restore. G. 18.
- retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (reteneō)**, hold back, detain, retain. G. 18.
- revertor, -ī, reversus**, return, come back. *Perfect has the active form, revertī.* G. 7.
- rēx, rēgis, m.**, king. 20.
- Rhēnus, -ī, m.**, the Rhine. 28.
- Rhodanus, -ī, m.**, the Rhone. G. 1.
- ripa, -ae, f.**, bank (of a stream). 11.
- rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, ask. 29.
- Rōma, -ae, f.**, Rome. 31.
- Rōmānus, -a, -um**, of Rome, Roman; *noun*, a Roman. 20.
- Rōmulus, -ī, m.**, founder and first king of Rome. 31.
- rosa, -ae, f.**, rose. 1.
- rūrsus, adv.**, again, back again. G. 25.
- rūs, rūris, n.**, the country (as *opposed to the city*). 34.
- Sabinus, -a, -um**, Sabine; *noun*, a

- Sabine. *The Sabines lived in central Italy.* 31.
- sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred. 74.
- sacrum, -i, *n.*, a holy thing or place: a religious rite. 33.
- saepe, *adv.*, often. 12.
- salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, safety. 32.
- sanciō, -īre, sānxi, sānctus, make sacred, make binding, ordain. G. 30.
- Santonēs, -um. *Acc.*, Santonōs, *m.*, a tribe of western Gaul north of the Garumna. G. 10.
- sapientia, -ae, *f.*, good sense, discretion, wisdom. 52.
- sarcina, -ae, *f.*, pack, baggage carried by soldiers. G. 24.
- satis, *indecl. adj. and adv.*, enough, sufficiently. 65.
- satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, satisfy, make amends, apologize. G. 14.
- scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness. 34.
- sciō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, know. G. 20.
- scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus, write. 22.
- scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield. 10.
- sēcēdō, -ere, sēcēssi, sēcēssūrus, withdraw, retire, go away. 74.
- sēcrētō, *adv.*, privately. G. 18.
- secundus, -a -um, following, second, favorable. 33. G. 14.
- sed, *conj.*, but. 18.
- sēdecim, *indecl. num.*, sixteen. 16.
- sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, sit, sit still, remain seated. 78.
- sēditō, -ōnis, *f.*, secession, mutiny, insurrection. 74.
- sēditōsus, -a, -um, seditious, factions. G. 17.
- Segusiāvi, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of central Gaul. G. 10.
- sēmentis, -is, *f.*, a sowing (of grain). G. 3.
- semper, *adv.*, always. G. 18.
- senātus, -ūs, *m.*, the senate. 61.
- senex, senis, *m.*, an old man. 78.
- sēni, -ae, -a, six each, six apiece. G. 15.
- sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, perceive, know, think. G. 18.
- sēparātīm, *adv.*, separately, privately. G. 19.
- septem, *indecl. num.*, seven. 56.
- septentrīō, -ōnis, *m.*, the north: *pl. with same meaning.* G. 1.
- septimus, -a, -um, seventh. G. 10.
- septuāgintā, *indecl. num.*, seventy. 56.
- sepultūra, -ae, *f.*, burial. G. 26.
- Sēquana, -ae, *m.*, the Seine, a river of Gaul. G. 1.
- Sēquani, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of eastern Gaul. G. 1.
- sequor, sequi, secūtus, follow, pursue, seek. 46.
- Servilius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman. 69.
- servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*, slavery, servitude. G. 11.
- Servius, -ī, *m.*, Servius Tullius, sixth king of Rome. 57.
- servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, save. 8.
- servus, -ī, *m.*, slave, servant. 5.
- seu, *same as sive*, or; seu . . . seu, *correl.*, either . . . or. G. 23.
- sex, *indecl. num.*, six. 56.
- sexāgintā, *indecl. num.*, sixty. G. 29.
- sextus, -a, -um, sixth. 56.
- sī, *conj.*, if. 41.
- sic, *adv.*, so, thus. 41.

- signum**, -ī, *n.*, sign, signal, military standard, image. 45.
- silentium**, -ī, *n.*, silence, quiet. 78.
- silva**, -ae, *f.*, forest. 3.
- simul**, *adv.*, at the same time; **simul atque**, *conj.*, as soon as. 64.
- sīn**, *conj.*, but if. G. 13.
- sine**, *prep. with abl.*, without. 22.
- singulī**, -ae, -a, one at a time, one by one. G. 6.
- sinister**, -tra, -trum, left (*not right*); **sinistra**, *f.* left hand. G. 25.
- sive**, *conj.*, or if; **sive . . . sive**, *correl.*, either . . . or. G. 12.
- socer**, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law. G. 12.
- socius**, -ī, *m.*, ally, associate. 32.
- sōl**, -is, *m.*, the sun. G. 1.
- solum**, -ī, *n.*, soil, ground, bottom. G. 11.
- sōlum**, *adv.*, alone, only. G. 12.
- sōlus**, -a, -um, alone. 66.
- solvō**, -ere, -lvī, -ūtus, loosen, release, fulfil, pay. 71.
- soror**, -ōris, *f.*, sister. G. 18.
- spatium**, -ī, *n.*, space, distance, space of time. G. 7.
- Sp.**, *abbreviation for Spurius, a Roman praenomen.* 66.
- spectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, look at, look toward, face. G. 1.
- spērō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hope, expect. 46.
- spēs**, **speī**, *f.*, hope. 45.
- spontis**, *gen. of defective noun, abl.*, **sponte**, *f.*, of one's own accord, voluntarily, by one's own influence. G. 9.
- statim**, *adv.*, immediately, at once. 35.
- statuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, set up, think, decide, pass judgment. G. 11.
- statūra**, -ae, *f.*, height, size, stature. 18.
- stīpendiārius**, -a, -um, tributary, dependent. G. 30.
- strepitus**, -ūs, *m.*, noise, din. 78.
- studeō**, -ēre, -uī, be eager for, be devoted to. G. 9.
- studium**, -ī, *n.*, zeal, eagerness, study. 70.
- sub**, *prep. with acc.*, under, towards; *with abl.*, under, at the foot of. G. 7.
- subdūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, draw up, withdraw. G. 22.
- subeō**, -īre, -īvī and -ii, -itūrus, come under, come up, undergo. G. 5.
- subiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw under, throw from under, subject, place near. G. 26.
- sublātus**. See **tollō**.
- sublevō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, lighten, raise up, assist. G. 16.
- submoveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, push back, dislodge, repulse. G. 25.
- subsidiū**, -ī, *n.*, reserve, help, reinforcement. 70.
- subsistō**, -ere, -stitī, make a stand, halt. G. 15.
- subvehō**, -ere, -vexī, -vectus, bring up. G. 16.
- succēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, come up, take the place of, prosper. G. 24.
- suī**, **sibi**, **sē**, *refl. pron. of the 3d pers.*, him, himself, etc. 54.

**Sulla**, -ae, *m.*, Lucius Cornelius Sulla, a great Roman general and statesman. G. 21.

**sum. esse, fuī, futūrus**, be. 14.

**summa**, -ae, *f.*, total, sum, whole. G. 29.

**summus**, -a, -um, highest, supreme, highest part of, top of; **summum**, -ī, *n.*, the top. 78.

**sūmō**, -ere, **sūmpsī, sūmptus**, take. G. 7.

**sūmptus**, -ūs, *m.*, expense. G. 18.

**superior**, -ius, *comp. adj.*, higher, earlier, stronger. G. 10.

**superō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, overcome, surpass. 7.

**supersum**, -esse, -fuī, be left over, remain, survive. G. 23.

**suppetō**, -ere, -iī, -itus (*subpetō*), be on hand, hold out. G. 3.

**suppliciter**, *adv.*, as a suppliant, as suppliants. G. 27.

**supplicium**, -ī, *n.*, punishment (*by death*). G. 19.

**suscipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (*subs-capiō*), take up, undertake, begin. G. 3.

**suspiciō**, -ōnis, *f.*, suspicion. G. 4.

**sustineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (*subs teneō*), withstand, endure, sustain, stop. G. 24.

**suus**, -a, -um, *refl. possessive adj.*, his, her, its, their own. 54.

**T.**, abbreviation for **Titus**, a Roman praenomen. 66.

**tabula**, -ae, *f.*, board, writing tablet, list, record. G. 29.

**taceō**, -ēre, **tacui**, be silent, keep secret, conceal. G. 17.

**tam**, *adv.*, so, so much. 47.

**tamen**, *adv.*, nevertheless, yet, still. 45.

**tametsī**, *conj.*, although. G. 30.

**tandem**, *adv.*, at length, finally. 10.

**tantus**, -a, -um, so great, so much. 65.

**tardus**, -a, -um, slow. 46.

**Tarquinius**, -ī, *m.*, name of the last royal family at Rome. 53.

**tēlum**, -ī, *n.*, a (*missile*) weapon, dart, missile. 10.

**temperantia**, -ae, *f.*, self-control, discretion. G. 19.

**temperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, control, control one's self, refrain. G. 7.

**templum**, -ī, *n.*, a temple. 52.

**temptō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, try, attempt. G. 14.

**tempus**, -oris, *n.*, time. 31.

**teneō**, -ēre, -ui, hold, have, keep. 7.

**ter**, *adv.*, three times. 56.

**terra**, -ae, *f.*, land. G. 30.

**terreō**, -ēre, **terruī**, -itus, frighten. 8.

**terror**, -ōris, *m.*, terror, panic, alarm. 30.

**tertius**, -a, -um, third. 47.

**testis**, -is, *m. and f.*, witness. G. 14.

**Tiberinus**, -ī, *m.*, the Tiber. 66.

**Tiberis**, -is, *m.*, the Tiber. 23.

**Tigurinus**, -a, -um, of the Tigurini, one of the four cantons of the Helvetians. G. 12.

**timeō**, -ēre, **timui**, fear. 6.

**timidus**, -a, -um, timid. 9.

**timor**, -ōris, *m.*, fear, alarm. G. 22.

**tolerō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, bear, endure, hold out. G. 28.

- tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus**, lift up, elate, take, take away, destroy. G. 5.
- Tolōsātēs, -um, m.**, *the inhabitants of Tolosa*. G. 10.
- tōtus, -a, -um**, all, the whole, total. 41.
- trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus**, hand over, surrender, relate. 43.
- trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (trāns-dūcō)**, lead across, transfer. 49.
- trāgula, -ae, f.**, a Gallic javelin. G. 26.
- trānō, -āre, -āvi**, swim across, swim over. 66.
- trāns, prep. with acc.**, across, on the other side of. 20.
- trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus**, go across, cross, go over. 54.
- trānsfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus**, pierce through. G. 25.
- trecentī, -ae, -a**, three hundred. G. 29.
- trēs, tria**, three. 38.
- tribūnus, -ī, m.**, a tribune, *a magistrate elected by the plebs to watch over the interests of the common people*. 74.
- tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus**, grant, render, attribute, ascribe. G. 13.
- trīduum, -ī, n.**, a period of three days, three days. G. 26.
- trīgintā, indecl. num.**, thirty. 26.
- triplex, Gen., triplicis, adj.**, three-fold. G. 24.
- Troucillus, -ī, m.**, Gaius Valerius Troncillus, *a Gaul*. G. 19.
- tū, tuī, tibi, tē, pers. pron.**, thou, you. 61.
- Tulingī, -ōrum, m.**, *a German tribe*. G. 5.
- Tullus, -ī, m.**, Tullus Hostilius, *third king of Rome*. 35.
- tum, adv.**, then. G. 17.
- turba, -ae, f.**, tumult, throng, crowd, mob. 59.
- tuus, tua, tuum**, thy, thine, your, yours. 57.
- ubi, rel. and interrog. adv.**, where, when. 55.
- ulciscor, -ī, ultus**, punish, avenge. G. 12.
- ūllus, -a, -um**, any. 74.
- ulterior, -ius, comp. adj.**, farther. G. 7.
- ultimus, -a, -um**, farthest, most remote, last. 60.
- ūnā, adv.**, together with, along with. G. 5.
- unde, rel. and interrog. adv.**, whence, from which. G. 28.
- ūndecim, indecl. num.**, eleven. 56.
- ūndēvigintī, indecl. num.**, nineteen. G. 8.
- undique, adv.**, from every side, on all sides, everywhere. 72.
- ūnus, -a, -um**, one, alone. 38.
- urbs, urbis, f.**, city. 23.
- usque, adv.**, all the way, even to, all the time, even till. 70.
- ūsus, -ūs, m.**, use, practice, experience, advantage; **ex ūsū**, to the advantage of. G. 30.
- ut, with indic.**, when, as; **with subjunc.**, that, in order that, so that, how. 38.
- uter, utra, utrum, interrog. adj.**, which (*of two*)? 48.
- uterque, utraque, utrumque**, each (*of two*), both. 64.
- utī, same as ut**, that, so that, in order that, how. G. 5.

**ūtor**, -ī. **ūsus**, use, employ. 48.

**utrimque**, *adv.*, on both sides, on each side. 43.

**utrum**, *conjunc.*, whether; sometimes to be omitted in translation. 63.

**uxor**, -ōris, *f.*, wife. 53.

**vacō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, be unoccupied, lie waste. G. 28.

**vadum**, -ī, *n.*, ford, shallow place, shoal. G. 6.

**vagor**, -āri, -ātus, roam about, wander. G. 2.

**valeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, be strong, prevail, be well. 57.

**Valerius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name. G. 19.

**vāllum**, -ī, *n.*, palisade, rampart, wall. G. 26.

**vāstō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, ravage, devastate. G. 11.

**vectigal**, -ālis, *n.*, tax, tribute, revenue. G. 18.

**vehō**, -ere, **vexī**, **vectus**, carry: *pass.*, ride. 70.

**Veii**, -ōrum, *m.*, a city of ancient Italy. 48.

**vel**, *conj. and adv.*, or, or even, even; **vel** . . . **vel**, *correl.*, either . . . or. 66.

**veniō**, -īre, **vēnī**, **ventūrus**, come. 30.

**Verbigenus**, -ī, *m.*, a canton of the Helvetii. G. 27.

**verbum**, -ī, *n.*, word. 50.

**vereor**, -ēri, -itus, fear, respect, dread. 46.

**vergō**, -ere, slope, lie, be situated. G. 1.

**vergobretus**, -ī, *m.*, vergobret,

chief magistrate of the Haedunns. G. 16.

**versor**, -āri, -ātus, move about, dwell, be engaged in. 68.

**vertō**, -ere, **vertī**, **versus**, turn. 76.

**Verucloetius**, -ī, *m.*, an Helvetian. G. 7.

**vērus**, -a, -um, true. G. 18.

**vesper**, -eri, *m.*, evening. G. 26.

**vester**, -tra, -trum, your. 43.

**veterānus**, -a, -um, veteran. G. 24.

**vetus**, *Gen.*, **veteris**, *adj.*, old, former. G. 13.

**vexō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, harass, annoy, ravage. G. 14.

**via**, -ae, *f.*, way, road, street. 3.

**victor**, -ōris, *m.*, conqueror, victor. 28.

**victōria**, -ae, *f.*, victory. 10.

**vicus**, -ī, *m.*, village. 13.

**videō**, -ēre, **vidī**, **vīsus**, see: *pass.*, be seen, seem. 6.

**vigilia**, -ae, *f.*, a watch. *The Romans divided the night into four watches from sunset to sunrise.* G. 12.

**vīgintī**, *indecl. num.*, twenty. 51.

**vincō**, -ere, **vicī**, **victus**, conquer. 46.

**vinculum**, -ī, *n.*, chain, bond. 72.

**vir**, -ī, *m.*, man, hero. 12.

**virtūs**, -ūtis, *f.*, manliness, bravery, valor, virtue. 42.

**vis**, **vīs**, *f.*, strength, force, violence. 51.

**vita**, -ae, *f.*, life. 5.

**vītō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, shun, avoid. G. 20.

**vivō**, -ere, **vixī**, **victūrus**, live, be alive. 46.



<b>vix</b> , <i>adv.</i> , hardly, scarcely, with difficulty. 77.	<b>voluntās, -ātis</b> , <i>f.</i> , will, good-will, consent. G. 7.
<b>vōbis</b> , <i>dat. and abl. of vōs</i> .	<b>vōs</b> , <i>pers. pron.</i> , you, yourselves. 59.
<b>vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus</b> , call. 6.	<b>voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus</b> , vow. 68.
<b>Vocontii, -ōrum</b> , <i>m.</i> , a Gallic tribe south of the Allobroges. G. 10.	<b>vulgus (or volgus), -ī</b> , <i>n.</i> , crowd, mass, common people. G. 20.
<b>volō, velle, voluī</b> , will, wish, be willing. 55.	<b>vulnerō, -āre, āvi, -ātus</b> , wound. 10.
<b>Volscī, -ōrum</b> , <i>m.</i> a powerful race akin to the Latins. 69.	<b>vulnus (or volnus), -eris</b> , <i>n.</i> , wound. 47.









